



## **400 Series IP Phones**

# **Administrator's Manual**

**Version 2.2.8**

**The information contained herein is proprietary and confidential and cannot be disclosed or duplicated without the prior written consent of Genesys Telecommunications Laboratories, Inc.**

Copyright © 2016 Genesys Telecommunications Laboratories, Inc. All rights reserved.

### **About Genesys**

Genesys is the world's leading provider of customer service and contact software - with more than 4,000 customers in 80 countries. Drawing on its more than 20 years of customer service innovation and experience, Genesys is uniquely positioned to help companies bring their people, insights and customer channels together to effectively drive today's customer conversation. Genesys software directs more than 100 million interactions every day, maximizing the value of customer engagement and differentiating the experience by driving personalization and multi-channel customer service - and extending customer service across the enterprise to optimize processes and the performance of customer-facing employees. Go to [www.genesys.com](http://www.genesys.com) for more information.

Each product has its own documentation for online viewing at the Genesys Documentation website.

### **Notice**

Although reasonable effort is made to ensure that the information in this document is complete and accurate at the time of release, Genesys Telecommunications Laboratories, Inc. cannot assume responsibility for any existing errors. Changes and/or corrections to the information contained in this document may be incorporated in future versions.

### **Your Responsibility for Your System's Security**

You are responsible for the security of your system. Product administration to prevent unauthorized use is your responsibility. Your system administrator should read all documents provided with this product to fully understand the features available that reduce your risk of incurring charges for unlicensed use of Genesys products.

### **Trademarks**

Genesys and the Genesys logo are registered trademarks of Genesys Telecommunications Laboratories, Inc. All other company names and logos may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders. © 2016 Genesys Telecommunications Laboratories, Inc. All rights reserved.

### **Technical Support from VARs**

If you have purchased support from a value-added reseller (VAR), please contact the VAR for technical support.

### **Ordering and Licensing Information**

Complete information on ordering and licensing Genesys products can be found in the [Genesys Licensing Guide](#).

**Released by: Genesys Telecommunications Laboratories, Inc.**  
<http://www.genesys.com/>

**Document Version:** 400\_IP\_Phone\_Administrator\_Guide\_10-2016\_v8.5.001.00

---

## Table of Contents

---

<b>Preface.....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Configuration Tools .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>2 IP Phone User Interface .....</b>	<b>20</b>
2.1 Accessing the Administration Menu .....	20
2.2 Changing Display Language.....	21
<b>3 Web Interface.....</b>	<b>22</b>
3.1 Accessing Web Interface .....	22
3.2 Getting Started with the Web .....	23
3.3 Configuring the Web Interface's Port .....	24
3.4 Configuring User Login Credentials .....	24
<b>4 Configuration File.....</b>	<b>25</b>
4.1 Introduction .....	25
4.2 File Syntax .....	25
4.3 Linking Multiple Files .....	25
4.4 Downloading the Configuration File from the Phone .....	26
4.5 Creating Configuration Files using VoIProvision Utility .....	26
4.5.1 Configuration File Format .....	26
4.5.2 Global Configuration File .....	26
4.5.3 VoIProvision Utility Overview.....	27
4.5.4 CSV File.....	27
4.5.5 Template File .....	27
4.5.6 Generated Configuration Files.....	27
4.5.7 Starting the VoIProvision Utility .....	28
4.5.8 Usage.....	28
4.6 Using the Encryption Tool.....	28
4.6.1 Encrypting Configuration Files.....	28
4.6.2 Encrypting Passwords in the Configuration File .....	29
<b>5 IP Phone Management Server .....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>6 Configuring TR-069 Management .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Automatic Provisioning .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>7 Introduction .....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>8 Updating the Configuration File Manually .....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>9 Setting up Network for Auto Provisioning .....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>10 Obtaining Firmware and Configuration Files.....</b>	<b>37</b>
10.1 Provisioning Hunt Order .....	37
10.2 Dynamic URL Provisioning .....	37
10.2.1 Provisioning using DHCP Option 160.....	40
10.2.2 Provisioning using DHCP Option 66/67 .....	41

10.2.3	Provisioning using DHCP Option 43.....	41
10.2.4	SIP SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY Messages .....	43
10.2.5	Hardcoded Domain Name for Provisioning Server .....	46
10.2.6	Cached Address of Last Provisioning Server Used .....	46
10.2.7	Redirect Server .....	47
10.3	Static URL Provisioning .....	48
<b>Quick Setup.....</b>		<b>50</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Quick Setup .....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Networking .....</b>		<b>52</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Configuring Date and Time Manually .....</b>	<b>53</b>
13.1	Configuring Daylight Saving Time.....	54
13.2	Configuring the NTP Server.....	57
13.3	Configuring NTP Server via DHCP .....	58
<b>14</b>	<b>Configuring IP Network Settings .....</b>	<b>60</b>
14.1	Configuring Static IP Address.....	60
14.1.1	Configuring Static IP Address using the Phone's LCD .....	60
14.1.2	Configuring IP Network Settings.....	61
14.2	Configuring Partial DHCP .....	63
<b>15</b>	<b>Configuring LAN and PC Port Settings .....</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>Configuring VLAN Settings .....</b>	<b>66</b>
16.1	Configuring Manual or Automatic VLAN Assignment .....	67
16.1.1	Configuring Manual VLAN Assignment to the IP Phone .....	67
16.1.2	Configuring Automatic VLAN Assignment to the IP Phone .....	67
<b>VoIP Settings .....</b>		<b>68</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>Configuring SIP Settings .....</b>	<b>69</b>
17.1	Configuring General SIP Settings .....	69
17.2	Configuring Proxy and Registration .....	73
17.2.1	Configuring Proxy Redundancy .....	77
17.2.2	Device Registration Failover/Failback .....	80
17.2.2.1	Failover.....	80
17.2.2.2	Failback .....	81
17.3	Configuring a Line .....	82
17.4	Configuring Shared Call Appearance .....	83
17.5	Configuring SIP Timers .....	84
17.6	Configuring SIP QoS .....	86
17.7	Configuring SIP Reject Code .....	86
<b>18</b>	<b>Configuring Dialing .....</b>	<b>88</b>
18.1	Configuring General Dialing Parameters .....	88
18.2	Configuring Auto Redial.....	90

18.3	Configuring Dial Tones .....	91
18.4	Configuring DTMF .....	93
18.5	Configuring Digit Maps and Dial Plans.....	94
18.6	Configuring Headset LED to Stay On .....	96
18.7	Configuring Default Audio Device .....	97
<b>19</b>	<b>Configuring Ring Tones .....</b>	<b>98</b>
19.1	Configuring Distinctive Ring Tones.....	98
19.2	Configuring CPT Regional Settings .....	99
19.3	Uploading Ring Tones .....	101
<b>20</b>	<b>Configuring Media Settings.....</b>	<b>103</b>
20.1	Configuring Media Streaming .....	103
20.2	Configuring RTP Port Range and Payload Type.....	104
20.3	Configuring RTP QoS.....	105
20.4	Configuring Codecs.....	106
<b>21</b>	<b>Configuring Voice Settings .....</b>	<b>108</b>
21.1	Configuring Gain Control .....	108
21.2	Configuring Jitter Buffer.....	108
21.3	Configuring Silence Compression.....	109
21.4	Configuring Noise Reduction .....	110
21.5	Configuring Echo Cancellation .....	112
<b>22</b>	<b>Configuring Extension Lines .....</b>	<b>113</b>
22.1	Using the Phone LCD.....	113
22.2	Using the Web Interface and Configuration File.....	114
<b>23</b>	<b>Configuring Supplementary Services .....</b>	<b>116</b>
23.1	Selecting the Application Server.....	116
23.2	Configuring Call Waiting .....	117
23.3	Configuring Call Forwarding .....	117
23.4	Configuring a Conference.....	119
23.5	Allowing the Initiator to Drop out of a Conference .....	119
23.6	Configuring Automatic Dialing .....	120
23.7	Configuring Automatic Answer .....	121
23.8	Configuring Do Not Disturb (DnD) .....	122
23.9	Configuring Message Waiting Indication.....	123
23.10	Configuring Advice of Charge.....	124
23.11	Disabling the HOLD Key.....	125
23.12	Configuring Ringing on the Default Audio Device .....	125
23.13	Allowing an Incoming Call when the Phone is Locked .....	126
23.14	Allowing Call Center Agents to Record Welcome Greetings.....	126
23.15	Configuring Attended and Semi-Attended Call Transfer .....	127
23.16	Configuring Blind Transfer .....	127
23.17	Creating a Speed Dial File for Configuration File .....	128
<b>24</b>	<b>Configuring Volume Levels.....</b>	<b>129</b>
24.1	Configuring Gain Control .....	129

24.2	Configuring Tone Volume .....	131
24.3	Configuring Ringer Volume.....	131
24.4	Configuring Speaker Volume .....	132
24.5	Configuring Handset Volume .....	134
24.6	Configuring Headset Volume .....	136
<b>Advanced Phone Settings .....</b>		<b>138</b>
<b>25</b>	<b>Configuring the Phone Directory .....</b>	<b>139</b>
25.1	Configuring the Corporate Directory .....	139
25.1.1	Configuring the LDAP-based Corporate Directory .....	139
25.1.2	Loading a Text-based Corporate Directory File .....	142
25.2	Modifying the Local Phone Directory .....	143
<b>26</b>	<b>Configuring Keys .....</b>	<b>144</b>
26.1	Configuring Speed Dials .....	144
26.1.1	420HD Phone Models.....	144
26.1.2	Deleting Speed Dials .....	145
26.1.3	Saving Configured Speed Dials.....	145
26.1.4	Creating a Speed Dial File for the Configuration File .....	146
26.2	Configuring Softkeys .....	147
26.2.1	Configuring Programmable Softkeys (PSK) .....	150
26.3	<b>Configuring Navigation Control Button Positions .....</b>	<b>151</b>
26.3.1	Saving Configured Keys .....	152
26.3.2	Loading Saved Keys to Phones .....	152
<b>27</b>	<b>Configuring Multicast Paging.....</b>	<b>153</b>
27.1	Configuring using the Web Interface.....	153
27.1.1	Barge-in .....	154
27.2	Configuring Using the Configuration File .....	155
<b>28</b>	<b>Configuring Feature Key Synchronization.....</b>	<b>156</b>
<b>Security .....</b>		<b>157</b>
<b>29</b>	<b>Implementing X.509 Authentication.....</b>	<b>158</b>
29.1	Factory-Set Certificates and AudioCodes Trusted Root CA.....	158
29.2	User-Generated Certificates .....	159
29.3	External Trusted Root CAs .....	160
<b>30</b>	<b>Loading a Certificate.....</b>	<b>161</b>
30.1	Loading the Trusted Root CA Certificate to the Phone .....	161
30.1.1	Loading Trusted Root CA Certificate Using Configuration File .....	161
30.2	Loading the Client Certificate to the Phone.....	162
30.2.1	Loading the Client Certificate to the Phone using the Configuration File .....	162
30.2.2	Enabling Server-side Authentication (Mutual Authentication) .....	163
30.3	Generating a Certificate Signing Request.....	164
30.4	Using Previously Loaded Certificates .....	165

<b>31</b>	<b>Configuring SIP TLS .....</b>	<b>166</b>
31.1	Configuring TLS .....	166
31.1.1	Configuring SIP TLS using the Web Interface .....	167
<b>32</b>	<b>Configuring 802.1x .....</b>	<b>168</b>
32.1	Configuring 802.1x using the Phone's LCD .....	168
32.1.1	Configuring EAP-MD5 Mode .....	169
32.1.2	Configuring EAP-TLS Mode .....	169
32.2	Configuring 802.1x Using Web and Configuration File .....	169
32.2.1	Configuring EAP MD5 Mode .....	169
32.2.2	Configuring EAP TLS Mode .....	170
<b>33</b>	<b>Configuring SRTP .....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>34</b>	<b>Configuring HTTP/S .....</b>	<b>172</b>
<b>35</b>	<b>Logging into a Remote HTTP/S Server using the Phone LCD .....</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>36</b>	<b>Securing the Web Interface using HTTP/S .....</b>	<b>174</b>
36.1	Provisioning .....	175
<b>37</b>	<b>MAC-Based Authenticaton .....</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>Maintenance .....</b>		<b>177</b>
<b>38</b>	<b>Changing Administrator Login Credentials .....</b>	<b>178</b>
<b>39</b>	<b>Restarting Phones .....</b>	<b>179</b>
39.1	Restarting from the Phone's LCD .....	179
39.2	Restarting the Phone using the Web Interface .....	180
<b>40</b>	<b>Restoring Phone Defaults .....</b>	<b>181</b>
40.1	Restoring Factory Defaults from the Phone's LCD .....	181
40.2	Restoring Factory Defaults using the Web Interface .....	182
<b>Status and Monitoring .....</b>		<b>183</b>
<b>41</b>	<b>Determining Network Status .....</b>	<b>184</b>
41.1	Determining LAN Status .....	184
41.2	Determining Port Status .....	184
41.3	Determining 802.1x Status .....	184
<b>42</b>	<b>Determining VoIP Status .....</b>	<b>185</b>
42.1	Determining Phone Status .....	185
42.2	Determining Line Status .....	185
42.3	Determining Memory Status .....	186
42.4	Viewing Current Call Information .....	187
<b>43</b>	<b>Viewing Call History .....</b>	<b>188</b>
<b>44</b>	<b>Accessing System Information .....</b>	<b>189</b>
44.1	Accessing Phone Firmware Version .....	189

44.1.1	Accessing Firmware Version using the Web Interface .....	189
44.1.2	Accessing Firmware Version from the Phone's LCD .....	189
44.2	Viewing Phone Firmware Release Information .....	190
44.2.1	Viewing Firmware Release Information in the Web Interface .....	190
44.2.2	Viewing Firmware Release Information in the Phone's LCD .....	191
<b>45</b>	<b>Monitoring Quality of Experience .....</b>	<b>191</b>
45.1	Configuring Remote Voice Quality Monitoring .....	191
45.1.1	Configuring RTCP Extended Report .....	192
45.1.2	Configuring Voice Quality Monitoring .....	193
<b>Diagnostics and Troubleshooting .....</b>		<b>194</b>
<b>46</b>	<b>Diagnosing Phone Hardware .....</b>	<b>195</b>
46.1	Testing Keypad and Hook .....	196
46.2	Testing Handset .....	197
46.3	Testing the Headset .....	197
46.4	Testing Hands Free .....	197
<b>47</b>	<b>Recovering Firmware .....</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>48</b>	<b>Configuring System Logging (Syslog) .....</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>49</b>	<b>Viewing Error Messages Displayed in Phone LCD .....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>50</b>	<b>Debugging using Packet Recording Parameters .....</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>51</b>	<b>Creating a Crash Dump File .....</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>52</b>	<b>Configuring Port Mirroring .....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>53</b>	<b>Enabling Tracing .....</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>Appendices .....</b>		<b>208</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Configuring Phones in Server-Specific Deployments .....</b>	<b>209</b>
A.1	BroadSoft's BroadWorks .....	209
A.1.1	Configuring DnD .....	210
A.1.2	Configuring FKS .....	211
A.1.3	Loading the Corporate Directory to the Phone .....	211
A.1.4	Adding a Contact to the Corporate Directory .....	213
A.1.5	Deleting a Contact from the Corporate Directory .....	213
A.1.6	Disabling Handset Mode .....	213
A.1.7	Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs .....	214
A.2	Genesys SIP Server for Contact Centers .....	215
A.2.1	Using DHCP to Auto Provision Phones .....	215
A.2.2	Verifying Firmware Version .....	215
A.2.3	Accessing a Phone's Web Interface .....	215
A.2.4	Configuring Dual Registration to Ensure SIP Business Continuity for Agents .....	217
A.2.5	Disabling the Web Interface .....	221
A.2.6	Forcing a Reboot on Provisioning .....	221
A.2.7	Provisioning using TFTP / FTP / HTTP / HTTPS in DHCP Options 66/67 .....	221
A.2.8	Enabling Agents to Sign in with Phone Numbers .....	222
A.2.9	Locking Agents Phones Alphabetical Keys .....	222
A.2.10	Playing a Beep on an Incoming Call .....	223

A.2.11	Enabling Proactive Mute.....	223
A.2.12	Configuring Automatic Answer .....	224
A.2.13	Regulating the 'Logged out' Message .....	224
A.2.14	3PCC (Third Party Call Control) .....	225
A.2.15	Disabling Handset Mode.....	225
A.2.16	Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs.....	226
A.2.17	Configuring a Redundant (Backup) Genesys Server .....	226
<b>B</b>	<b>Configuring Automatic Call Distribution (ACD).....</b>	<b>228</b>
B.1	Softkey Display and Command Menu Options.....	232
<b>C</b>	<b>Recovering AudioCodes' IP Phone .....</b>	<b>233</b>
C.1	Identifying that the Phone is in Recovery Mode .....	233
C.2	Verifying that the Phone is in Recovery Mode .....	233
C.3	Recovering the Phone .....	235
C.4	Verifying that the Phone is Downloading the Image File .....	238
C.4.1	Verifying Using Wireshark .....	238
C.4.2	Verifying Using tftpd64.....	240
C.4.3	Verifying Using the Phone LCD.....	241
<b>D</b>	<b>Deploying Genesys IP Phone - Use Case .....</b>	<b>242</b>
D.1	Preparing Configuration (cfg) Files for the Enterprise Customer .....	242
D.1.1	Saving the Phone's Default Configuration to File .....	242
D.1.2	Preparing a global.cfg Configuration File .....	243
D.1.3	Generating MAC-specific <private>.cfg Configuration Files.....	243
D.2	Preparing the DHCP Server to Automatically Provision IP Phones .....	247
D.3	Making Sure Phones are Correctly Provisioned.....	247
<b>E</b>	<b>Supported SIP RFCs and Headers.....</b>	<b>248</b>
E.1	SIP Compliance Tables .....	250
E.1.1	SIP Methods .....	250
E.1.2	SIP Headers .....	251
<b>F</b>	<b>Parameters Requiring Reload / Reboot.....</b>	<b>253</b>
<b>G</b>	<b>Specifications.....</b>	<b>254</b>
<b>H</b>	<b>RTCP-XR Parameters.....</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>I</b>	<b>Example SIP - PUBLISH Message.....</b>	<b>259</b>

## List of Figures

Figure 2-1: Language .....	21
Figure 3-1: Web Interface Login .....	22
Figure 3-2: Web Interface Areas .....	23
Figure 3-3: Web Interface - User Account .....	24
Figure 6-1: Web Interface - TR-069 .....	31
Figure 8-1: Web Interface - Configuration File .....	35
Figure 8-2: Web Interface - Load New Configuration File .....	35
Figure 10-1: Web Interface - Automatic Provisioning – Dynamic URL .....	37
Figure 10-2: Web Interface - Automatic Provisioning - DHCP Option 160 .....	40
Figure 10-3: Provisioning using DHCP Option 43 in the DHCP Server .....	42
Figure 10-4: Redirect Server Configuration Process .....	47
Figure 10-5: Web Interface - Automatic Provisioning – Static URL .....	48
Figure 11-1: Web Interface - Quick Setup .....	51
Figure 13-1: Web Interface - Date and Time .....	53
Figure 13-2: Web Interface - NTP & Time Settings .....	54
Figure 13-3: Web Interface – Daylight Saving Time .....	54
Figure 13-4: Web Interface - NTP & Time Settings .....	57
Figure 13-5: Web Interface - NTP and Time Settings .....	58
Figure 14-1: Web Interface - Network Settings .....	61
Figure 15-1: Web Interface - Network Settings - Port Mode .....	65
Figure 16-1: Web Interface - Network Settings - VLAN Settings .....	66
Figure 17-1: Web Interface - Signaling Protocols- SIP General .....	69
Figure 17-2: Web Interface - SIP Proxy and Registrar .....	73
Figure 17-3: Web Interface - Proxy Redundancy .....	77
Figure 17-4: Web Interface - Line Settings .....	82
Figure 17-5: Line Settings .....	82
Figure 17-6: Shared Call Appearance .....	83
Figure 17-7: Web Interface - Signaling Protocols - SIP Timers .....	84
Figure 17-8: Web Interface - Quality of Service .....	86
Figure 17-9: Web Interface - General Parameters - Reject Code .....	86
Figure 18-1: Web Interface Dialing .....	88
Figure 18-2: Automatic Redial On Busy .....	90
Figure 18-3: Dialing Page - Tones .....	91
Figure 18-4: Web Interface - Services Page - Tones .....	91
Figure 18-5: Web Interface - DTMF Transport Mode .....	93
Figure 18-6: Web Interface - Digit Map and Dial Plan .....	94
Figure 18-7: Web Interface - Default Audio Device .....	97
Figure 19-1: Web Interface – Distinctive Ringing .....	98
Figure 19-2: Web Interface - Tones - Regional Settings .....	99
Figure 19-3: Web Interface - Upload Ringing Tone .....	101
Figure 20-1: Web Interface - Media Streaming .....	104
Figure 20-2: Web Interface - Quality of Service .....	105
Figure 20-3: Web Interface - Media Streaming - Codecs .....	106
Figure 20-4: Web Interface - Media Streaming - Codecs .....	107
Figure 21-1: Web Interface - Voice – Jitter Buffer .....	108
Figure 21-2: Web Interface - Voice - Silence Compression .....	109
Figure 21-3: Web Interface - Voice - Noise Reduction .....	110
Figure 22-1: Web Interface - Line Settings .....	114
Figure 23-1: Web Interface - Services .....	116
Figure 23-2: Web Interface - Services - Call Waiting .....	117
Figure 23-3: Web Interface - Services - Call Forward .....	117
Figure 23-4: Web Interface - Services - Conference .....	119
Figure 23-5: Web Interface - Dialing - Automatic Dialing .....	120
Figure 23-6: Web Interface - Services - DnD .....	122
Figure 23-7: Web Interface - Services - MWI .....	123

Figure 23-8: Web Interface - Services – AOC Support .....	124
Figure 24-1: Web Interface - Voice - Gain Control .....	129
Figure 25-1: Web Interface - LDAP .....	139
Figure 25-2: Web Interface - Corporate Directory .....	142
Figure 25-3: Web Interface - Directory - Add Contact .....	143
Figure 26-1: Web Interface – Personal Settings – Speed Dials (420HD and 405 Phone Models) .....	144
Figure 26-2: Web Interface – Softkeys .....	148
Figure 26-3: Web Interface - Navigation Keys .....	151
Figure 26-4: Web Interface – Load and Save .....	152
Figure 27-1: Web Interface – Enable Paging .....	153
Figure 27-2: Web Interface – Enable Barge-in .....	155
Figure 29-1: Certificate .....	160
Figure 30-1: Web Interface – Root CA Certificate .....	161
Figure 30-2: Web Interface – Client Certificate .....	162
Figure 30-3: Web Interface – Certificate Signing Request .....	164
Figure 31-1: Web Interface – Signaling Protocols - SIP General .....	167
Figure 32-1: Web Interface –801.1X Settings - EAP-MD5 .....	169
Figure 32-2: Web Interface –801.1X Settings - EAP-TLS .....	170
Figure 33-1: Web Interface - SRTP .....	171
Figure 36-1: Securing Web Interface Management with HTTP/S .....	174
Figure 36-2: Web Interface – Automatic Provisioning .....	175
Figure 38-1: Web Interface – Users – Administrator Account .....	178
Figure 39-1: Web Interface –Restart System .....	180
Figure 39-2: Confirmation Box .....	180
Figure 40-1: Web Interface –Restore Defaults .....	182
Figure 40-2: Submit Confirmation Box .....	182
Figure 41-1: Web Interface - LAN Information .....	184
Figure 41-2: Web Interface – Port Mode Status .....	184
Figure 41-3: Web Interface - 802.1X Status .....	184
Figure 42-1: Web Interface - VoIP Status - Phone Status .....	185
Figure 42-2: Web Interface – Line Status .....	185
Figure 42-3: Web Interface – Memory Status .....	186
Figure 42-4: Web Interface – Memory Status – Linux meminfo Command – Displayed Information .....	187
Figure 42-5: Web Interface –Line 1 Call Information .....	187
Figure 43-1: Web Interface – Call History .....	188
Figure 44-1: Web Interface - System Information–Firmware Version .....	189
Figure 44-2: Web Interface - System Information – Release Information .....	190
Figure 45-1: Web Interface - Media Streaming - RTCP-XR .....	192
Figure 46-1: Diagnostic Tests Displayed in Phone LCD .....	195
Figure 46-2: Keypad and Hook Test– On-Hook (e.g., 420HD) .....	196
Figure 46-3: Keypad Test – Off-Hook (e.g., 420HD) .....	196
Figure 48-1: Web Interface –System Logging .....	199
Figure 50-1: Web Interface – Recording .....	202
Figure 51-1: Web Interface - Crash Dump .....	204
Figure 52-1: Web Interface –Port Mirroring .....	205
Figure 53-1: Tracing System Key Behavior .....	206
Figure A-2: Configuring DnD in BroadSoft's BroadWorks - Status .....	210
Figure A-3: Configuring DnD in BroadSoft's BroadWorks .....	210
Figure A-4: Web Interface - Services .....	211
Figure A-5: Web Interface – Services - Feature Key Synchronization .....	211
Figure A-6: Web Interface – Directory – Delete a Contact .....	213
Figure A-7: Web Interface - Signaling Protocol – SIP Proxy and Registrar .....	217
Figure A-8: Web Interface - Signaling Protocol – SIP Proxy and Registrar – Secondary Proxy .....	218
Figure A-9: Registering a Phone on the Redundant Genesys Server .....	226
Figure B-1: Web Interface - ACD .....	229
Figure B-2: Web Interface – ACD – Unavailable Reason Code .....	229
Figure C-1: Identifying Recovery Mode .....	233
Figure C-2: Verifying Recovery Mode in Wireshark .....	233
Figure C-3: Source Ethernet MAC Address in Wireshark Identical to Phone Base's .....	234

Figure C-4: Recovering the Phone - Configure the PC NIC to which the Phone is Connected.....	235
Figure C-5: Verifying with Wireshark that the Phone is Downloading Phone .img File .....	238
Figure C-6: Verifying .img File Download with Wireshark – Filtering by TFTP .....	240
Figure C-7: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64 .....	240
Figure C-8: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64 .....	240
Figure C-9: Verifying .img File Download from the Phone LCD .....	241

---

## List of Tables

---

Table 2-1: Language Display Parameters.....	21
Table 3-1: Web Interface - Port Parameters .....	24
Table 3-2: User Name and Password Parameters .....	24
Table 4-1: Example of CSV File .....	27
Table 5-1: IP Phone Management Server Parameters .....	30
Table 6-1: TR-069 Management Parameters.....	31
Table 10-1: DHCP Automatic Provisioning Parameters.....	38
Table 10-2: Auto Provisioning via DHCP Option 66/67 .....	41
Table 10-3: Static URL Automatic Provisioning Parameters.....	49
Table 13-1: Date Display Format .....	54
Table 13-2: Daylight Saving Time Parameters.....	55
Table 13-3: NTP Server Parameters .....	57
Table 13-4: NTP Server and GMT Parameters.....	59
Table 14-1: Network Settings Parameters .....	62
Table 14-2: Partial DHCP Parameters .....	63
Table 15-1: Port Settings.....	65
Table 16-1: VLAN Settings .....	66
Table 17-1: SIP General Parameters .....	70
Table 17-2: Proxy and Registrar Parameters.....	73
Table 17-3: SIP Proxy Server Redundancy Parameters.....	78
Table 17-4: Device Registration Failover Parameters .....	80
Table 17-5: Device Registration Failback Parameter.....	81
Table 17-6: SIP Timers Parameters.....	84
Table 17-7: SIP QoS Parameters.....	86
Table 17-8: Reject Code Parameter.....	87
Table 18-1: Dialing Parameters.....	88
Table 18-2: Automatic Redial On Busy Parameters .....	90
Table 18-3: Dial Tones Parameters .....	91
Table 18-4: DTMF Transport Mode .....	93
Table 18-5: Digit Map and Dial Plan Parameters.....	94
Table 18-6: Headset LED Parameter .....	96
Table 18-7: Audio Device Parameter .....	97
Table 19-1: Distinctive Ringing Parameters.....	98
Table 19-2: Regional Parameters .....	99
Table 19-3: Ring Tone Parameters .....	102
Table 20-1: Media Streaming Parameters .....	103
Table 20-2: RTP Port Range and Payload Type Parameters .....	104
Table 20-3: RTP QoS Parameter .....	105
Table 20-4: Codec Parameters .....	106
Table 21-1: Jitter Buffer Parameters .....	108
Table 21-2: Silence Compression Parameters.....	109
Table 21-3: Noise Reduction Parameters .....	110
Table 22-1: Line Parameters .....	114
Table 23-1: General Supplementary Services Parameters.....	116
Table 23-2: Call Waiting Parameters .....	117
Table 23-3: Call Forward Parameters .....	118
Table 23-4: Conference Parameters .....	119
Table 23-5: Allowing a Conference Initiator to Drop Out when On-Hooking.....	119
Table 23-6: Automatic Dialing Parameters.....	120
Table 23-7: Automatic Answer Parameters.....	121
Table 23-8: Do Not Disturb Parameters .....	122
Table 23-9: MWI Parameters .....	123
Table 23-10: AOC Parameters.....	124
Table 23-11: Disabling the HOLD Key .....	125
Table 23-12: Configuring Ringing on the Default Audio Device.....	125
Table 23-13: Allowing an Incoming Call when the Phone is Locked .....	126

Table 23-14: Letting Call Center Agents Record Welcome Greetings.....	127
Table 23-15: Configuring a Softkey with Attended and Semi-Attended Call Transfer Functionality ....	127
Table 23-16: Configuring a Key with Blind Transfer Functionality .....	127
Table 24-1: Automatic Gain Control Parameters .....	129
Table 24-2: Tone Volume Parameter .....	131
Table 24-3: Ringer Volume Parameters .....	131
Table 24-4: Speaker Parameters .....	132
Table 24-5: Handset Gain Parameters.....	134
Table 24-6: Headset Gain Parameters.....	136
Table 25-1: LDAP Parameters .....	139
Table 25-2: Provisioning Parameters .....	142
Table 26-1: Speed Dials Parameters .....	145
Table 26-2: Default Softkeys .....	147
Table 26-3: Softkeys Parameters (420HD/405 Phone).....	148
Table 26-4: SoftKey Parameters .....	149
Table 27-1: Paging Function Key Parameters .....	153
Table 27-2: Barge-in Parameters .....	155
Table 27-3: Paging Parameters .....	155
Table 28-1: Feature Key Synchronization Parameters .....	156
Table 30-1: Root CA Certificate Parameters.....	161
Table 30-2: Client Certificate Parameters .....	162
Table 30-3: Server-side Authentication .....	163
Table 31-1: SIP-over-TLS Parameters.....	166
Table 32-1: EAP MD5 Parameters.....	170
Table 33-1: SRTP Parameters .....	171
Table 35-1: HTTP/S Login Authentication.....	173
Table 37-1: Authentication.....	176
Table 38-1: Username and Password Parameters .....	178
Table 42-1: Memory Status – Linux Commands .....	186
Table 45-1: RTCP_XR Parameters.....	192
Table 45-2: Voice Quality Monitoring Parameters .....	193
Table 48-1: Syslog Parameters .....	199
Table 49-1: Error Messages Displayed in Phone LCD .....	201
Table 50-1: Recording Parameters .....	202
Table 51-1: Crash Dump Parameters .....	204
Table 52-1: Port Mirroring Parameters.....	205
Table 53-1: Tracing Parameters.....	207
Table A-1: Features Supported in a BroadSoft Environment.....	209
Table A-2: BroadSoft Server - Shared Call Appearance Add .....	213
Table A-3: Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs.....	214
Table A-4: SIP Proxy and Registrar Parameters.....	218
Table A-5: Disabling the Web Interface.....	221
Table A-6: Forcing a Reboot on Provisioning.....	221
Table A-7: Enabling Agents to Sign in with Phone Numbers .....	222
Table A-8: Locking Agents Phones Alphabetical Keys .....	222
Table A-9: Playing a Beep on an Incoming Call.....	223
Table A-10: Enabling Proactive Mute.....	223
Table A-11: Automatic Answer.....	224
Table A-12: Regulating the 'Logged out' Message .....	224
Table A-13: 3PCC Parameters.....	225
Table A-14: BroadSoft Server - Shared Call Appearance Add .....	225
Table A-15: Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs.....	226
Table A-16: Redundant Genesys Server - Parameters .....	226
Table B-1: ACD Parameters.....	230
Table B-2: Broadsoft-Softkey Display States and Command Menu Options .....	232
Table D-1: CSV File Description .....	243
Table E-1: Supported IETF RFCs .....	248
Table E-2: Supported SIP Methods.....	250
Table E-3: Supported SIP Headers.....	251

Table G-1: IP Phone Specifications .....	254
Table H-1: RTCP-XR Parameters .....	257



## Preface

Welcome to the *Genesys 400 Series IP Phones Administrator's Guide*. This guide shows system administrators how to configure Genesys 405 and 420HD IP Phone to operate with Genesys SIP Server in a Genesys contact center.

## Notice

Information contained in this document is believed to be accurate and reliable at the time of printing. However, due to ongoing product improvements, Genesys cannot guarantee accuracy of printed material after the Date Published nor can it accept responsibility for errors or omissions. Updates to this document and other documents as well as software updates can be viewed on the Genesys documentation site at [docs.genesys.com](https://docs.genesys.com).

## WEEE EU Directive

Pursuant to the WEEE EU Directive, electronic and electrical waste must not be disposed of with unsorted waste. Please contact your local recycling authority for disposal of this product.

## Customer Support

If you have purchased support directly from Genesys, please read the [Genesys Care Support Guide for On-Premises](#) for complete information on how and when to contact Customer Care.

## Abbreviations and Terminology

Each abbreviation, unless widely used, is spelled out in full when first used.

## Documentation Feedback

If you especially like or dislike anything about this document, feel free to e-mail your comments to [Techpubs.webadmin@genesys.com](mailto:Techpubs.webadmin@genesys.com).

When you send us comments, you grant Genesys a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate, without incurring any obligation to you.

## Related Documentation

Document Name
420HD IP Phone User's Manual
420HD IP Phone Quick Guide
405 IP Phone User's Manual
405 IP Phone Quick Guide



**Note:** Throughout this document, where features can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File, the Web parameter is displayed in the regular font above its corresponding Configuration File parameter, which is enclosed in square brackets in bold font type.

# 1 Introduction

This manual is intended for the system administrator responsible for setting up and configuring the 405 or 420HD IP Phone.

Genesys IP phones are based on Genesys proprietary High Definition (HD) voice technology, providing clarity and a rich audio experience in Voice-over-IP (VoIP) calls. The phones are fully-featured telephones that provide voice communication over an IP network, allowing you to place and receive phone calls, put calls on hold, transfer calls, make conference calls, and so on.

The phone offers a wide variety of management and configuration tools:

- **Phone's LCD display user interface** - easy-to-use, menu-driven display screen, providing basic phone configuration and status capabilities
- **Web interface** - provides a user-friendly Web interface that runs on a Web browser (Microsoft® Internet Explorer is the recommended browser).
- **Configuration file** - text-based file (created using any plain text editor such as Microsoft's Notepad) containing configuration parameters and which is loaded to the phone using the Web interface or a TFTP, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS server.
- **TR-069** for remote configuration and management

For a detailed description on hardware installation and for operating the phone's call features, refer to the *User's Manual*.



# Part I

## Configuration Tools

## 2 IP Phone User Interface

The IP phone provides a Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) based screen, offering an intuitive, menu-driven interface for configuring the phone. The administrative tasks are performed in the phone's **Administration** menu.

### 2.1 Accessing the Administration Menu

This section shows how to access the **Administration** menu from the IP phone LCD.

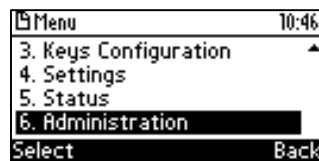


**Note:**

- The phone is password protected. The default password is 1234. To change the login password, use the phone's Web interface or Configuration file.
- After entering the password, the access session is applied to all the submenus.
- To change the **Administration** menu's login password, use the phone's Web interface (see Section 38 on page 178), or use the configuration file.

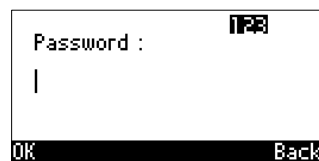
➤ **To access the Administration menu:**

1. In idle display, press the **MENU** key on the phone; the Menu list is displayed. Navigate down to the **Administration** option.



**Note:** After pressing the MENU key, you can press the *number* of a menu item to *directly* open it. For example, after pressing the MENU key, you can press the **6** key on the phone to directly open the item.

2. Press the **Select** softkey; you are prompted for a password.



3. Enter your password, and then choose **OK**. When entering the password, you can change between numerals and letters by pressing pound (#).

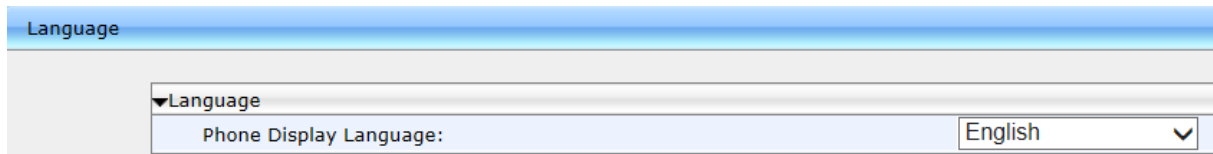
## 2.2 Changing Display Language

This section shows how to change the language in the phone LCD. Language can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To choose a language using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Language page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Language**).

**Figure 2-1: Language**



2. Select the language according to the parameter in the table below, and then click **Submit**; the phone reboots and changes the LCD display language accordingly.

➤ **To choose a language using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 2-1: Language Display Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Phone Display Language [personal_settings/language]	Determines the LCD user interface language. See the <i>Release Notes</i> for the list of languages supported.
[personal_settings/lcd_contrast]	Determines the contrast of the LCD screen. Configure to a level that is comfortable for the user. Range: 0-30 (420HD). The default value depends on the hardware revision.

## 3 Web Interface

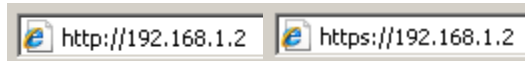
This section describes the phone's Web interface. You can use the Web interface to configure the device.

### 3.1 Accessing Web Interface

You can use any standard Web browser (such as Microsoft Internet Explorer) to access the phone's Web interface. The IP address used for accessing the Web interface is the phone's IP address, received from a DHCP server or manually configured (static IP address).

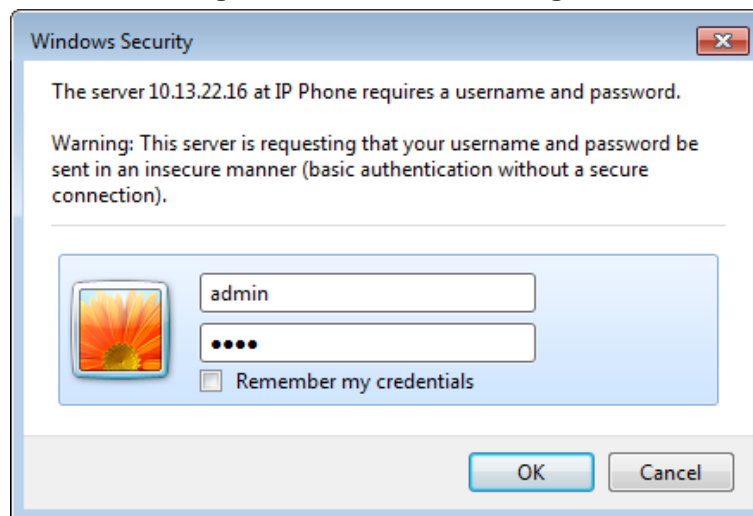
➤ **To access the phone's Web interface:**

1. Connect the LAN port of your phone to the IP network (using the Cable or ADSL modem from your Internet Service Provider).
2. Determine the phone's IP address obtained from the DHCP server, using the phone's LCD screen as described in Section 41 on page 184 (in the 'IP Address' field).
3. Open a Web browser, and then in the URL address field, enter the phone's IP address (for example, `http://192.168.1.2` or `https://192.168.1.2`), as displayed below:



The Web login window appears:

**Figure 3-1: Web Interface Login**



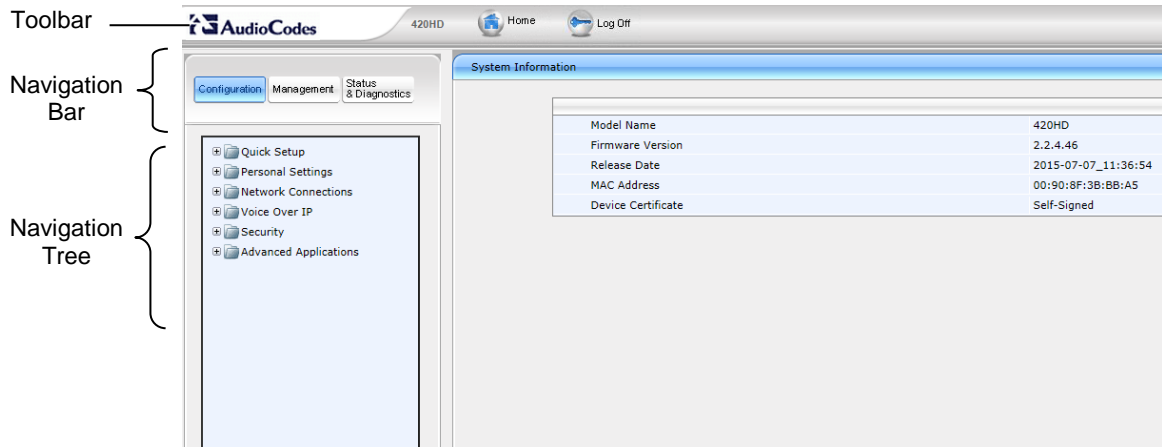
**Note:** The administrator's default login user name and password are **admin** and **1234** respectively. To change login credentials, see Section 38 on page 178.

4. Alternatively, if your DHCP and DNS servers are synchronized, you can access the phone Web browser by using the following method:  
**http://<Phone Model>-<MAC Address>.<Domain Name>**  
e.g. `http://420hd-001122334455.corp.YourCompany.com`
5. Enter the **User name** and **Password**, and then click **OK**.



## 3.2 Getting Started with the Web

The areas of the Web interface are shown below:

**Figure 3-2: Web Interface Areas**



The Web interface is composed of the following main areas:

- **Toolbar:** displays Genesys logo and provides the following buttons:
  -  **Home:** opens the Home page
  -  **Log off:** closes the Web interface
- **Navigation bar:** provides tabs for accessing the configuration menus:
  - **Configuration:** provides menus for configuring the phone.
  - **Management:** provides menus for various management tasks such as firmware upgrade and changing the login username and password.
  - **Status & Diagnostics:** provides menus for displaying information on the status of the phone, such as call history.
- **Navigation tree:** tree-like, hierarchical structure of menus pertaining to the selected tab on the Navigation bar.
- **Configuration pane:** displays the configuration parameters pertaining to a selected menu in the Navigation tree.

### 3.3 Configuring the Web Interface's Port

This section shows how to assign a port number to the Web interface, using the Configuration File.

- **To configure the Web interface port using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 3-1: Web Interface - Port Parameters**

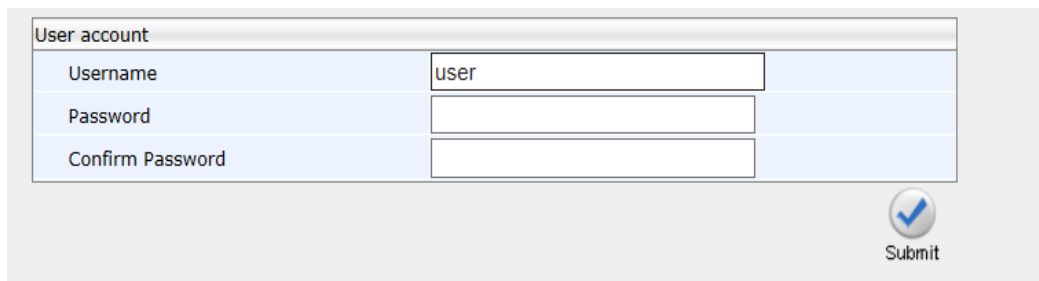
Parameter	Description
[system/http_server_port]	Assigns a port number to the Web interface. The HTTP server by default uses port number 80. Range: 0-65535.
[system/https_server_port]	Assigns a port number to the Web interface. The HTTPS server by default uses port number 443. Range: 0-65535.

### 3.4 Configuring User Login Credentials

This section shows how to configure the phone user's name and password.

- **To configure the phone user's name and password using the Web interface:**
  1. Access the User Account page (**Management** menu > **Administration** > **Users**):

**Figure 3-3: Web Interface - User Account**



2. Configure using the table below as reference, and click **Submit**.

- **To configure using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 3-2: User Name and Password Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Username [system/web_user_name]	The phone user name. Default: admin. Applies only to the Web interface.
Password [system/web_user_password]	The encrypted phone password. Default: 1234. Applies only to the Web interface, and LCD.

## 4 Configuration File

This section describes the configuration file and the parameters you can configure in it.

### 4.1 Introduction

The configuration file can be loaded to the phone using the automatic provisioning mechanism, or manually from your local computer using the Web interface (see Section 3 on page 22). The subsections below describe configuration file syntax and linking additional configuration files to a configuration file.

### 4.2 File Syntax

The configuration file can be created using a standard ASCII, text-based program such as Notepad. The configuration file is a `.cfg` file with the file name being the phone's MAC address: **<phone's MAC address>.cfg**.

The syntax of the configuration file is as follows:

```
<parameter name>=<value>
```

Ensure that the configuration file adheres to the following guidelines:

- No spaces on either side of the equals (=) sign.
- Each parameter must be on a new line.

Below is an example of part of a configuration file:

```
system/type=420HD
voip/line/0/enabled=1
voip/line/0/id=1234
voip/line/0/description=420HD
voip/line/0/auth_name=1234
voip/line/0/auth_password=4321
```

### 4.3 Linking Multiple Files

The Configuration file allows you to include links (URL and/or file name) to other Configuration files that provide additional parameter settings. This is especially useful in deployments with multiple phones, where the phones share common configuration but where each phone has some unique settings. In such a scenario, a phone's Configuration file can include unique parameter settings as well as links to additional Configuration files with settings common to all phones.

Linking additional files is achieved by using the **include** function in the phone's Configuration file. For example, the below Configuration file provides links to additional Configuration files (shown in bolded font):

```
system/type=420HD
include 420HD_<MAC>_voip.cfg
include vlan_conf.cfg
include network_conf.cfg
include provisioning_conf.cfg
```

In addition, the Configuration file can provide URL paths (FTP, TFTP, HTTP, or HTTPS) to where the additional files are located, as shown in the example below (shown in bolded font):

```
system/type=420HD
include http://10.10.10.10/420HD_<MAC>_voip.cfg
include https://remote-pc/vlan_conf.cfg
include tftp://10.10.10.10/420HD_<MAC>_network.cfg
include ftp://remote-pc/provisining_conf.cfg
```



**Note:** If no URL is provided in the Configuration file, the files are retrieved according to the provisioning information (e.g. DHCP Option 160 as well as Option 66/67).

## 4.4 Downloading the Configuration File from the Phone

For more information, see [Part VII, Maintenance](#).

## 4.5 Creating Configuration Files using VolProvision Utility

When installing Genesys' IP Phones, the integrator or IT manager typically wishes to configure each installed IP phone automatically. Using DHCP options or other methods, the IP phone can be instructed to download a configuration file. This file is typically unique to each IP phone, based on the MAC address. This MAC-specific configuration file is generated with IP phone specific configuration parameters; such as, the extension ID, name and authentication password.

Not all of the iPBX and SoftSwitch vendors (and especially the full solution vendors) include provisioning in their interoperability programs. Therefore, Genesys, as an IP Phone vendor, is required to provide a standalone provisioning tool that will enable the provisioning of our phones in such environments.

Genesys now provides a tool that assists in the automatic generation of such configuration files. These files can be generated for the initial configuration of the IP phones and then later regenerated for subsequent configuration updates as desired.

### 4.5.1 Configuration File Format

The detailed format of the IP Phones configuration files are described in the appendix.

The following is an output example of an automatically generated MAC-specific file:

```
system/type=420HD
voip/line/0/enabled=1
voip/line/0/id=56832432
voip/line/0/auth_name=3423fdwer2tre
voip/line/0/auth_password=123456
include global.cfg
```

### 4.5.2 Global Configuration File

In addition to the MAC-specific files, it is recommended to maintain a single global configuration file, which contains parameters that are common to all IP phones in the specific site. The MAC-specific files can call the global file (using the 'include' method) as illustrated in the above example. For more information, see 'Linking Additional Files using "Include"' in the Administrator's Manual.

### 4.5.3 VolProvision Utility Overview

The VolProvision utility is a generic tool that automatically generates multiple MAC-specific configuration files (.cfg). The utility generates a separate .cfg file for each IP phone.

To execute the utility, the user needs to prepare a csv file and a *template* file. The csv file contains the tagged records for each IP phone and the template file maps these tagged records to a configuration file format, which can be read by the IP Phone.

### 4.5.4 CSV File

The csv file contains a list of tags and a list of the tag's values. The first line in the file contains the list of tags (comma-separated) and each of the other lines contains a list of values, where each line record represents an individual IP phone.

The csv file is usually exported from the customer's IP-PBX or some other database and typically contains the list of IP phones (e.g. MAC, extension ID, user name and password of each IP phone).

**Table 4-1: Example of CSV File**

[mac]	[name]	[id]	[password]
00908F123456	Jonathan	4071	12345
00908F123457	David	4418	12345

When opened as a text file, the csv file appears similar to the example below:

```
[mac],[name],[id],[password]
00908F123456,Jonathan,4071,12345
00908F123457,David,4418,12345
```

### 4.5.5 Template File

The template file defines the format of the generated configuration files, but contains tags instead of actual values. The **VolProvision** utility reads the template file and replaces each tag with actual values from the csv file.

Example of a template file:

```
system/type=420HD
voip/line/0/enabled=1
voip/line/0/id=[id]
voip/line/0/auth_name=[name]
voip/line/0/auth_password=[password]
include global.cfg
```

### 4.5.6 Generated Configuration Files

The generated configuration (.cfg) files use a similar format to the template file; however the tags are replaced with the actual values that are read by the VolProvision utility from the csv file. One of the tags defined in the csv file, should be used as the .cfg file name (in order for the VolProvision utility to generate a separate .cfg file for each line record in the csv file). Typically the tag which defines the MAC address is used as the .cfg file name.

### 4.5.7 Starting the VoIProvision Utility

The VoIProvision utility can run on both the Linux and Windows platforms. The VoIProvision utility initially parses the csv file to generate the list of tags. The VoIProvision then reads each line record of values in the csv file and for each line record, does the following:

- Parses the line record to create a list of values
- Opens the template file
- Generates the .cfg file name and create a new .cfg file
- Reads the template file, associates the mapped tags with actual values from the csv file and writes the result to the .cfg file
- Closes the .cfg file and template file

### 4.5.8 Usage

```
USAGE: VoIProvision<csv file><template file><.cfg file>
```

Note the following:

- The first line of the csv file contains the list of tags (e.g., [mac],[name],[id]).
- The remainder of the csv file contains a line record per .cfg file (e.g. 00908f112233,4071,Ethan).
- There is no restriction on the format of the tags (e.g., [tag] or @tag@).
- The template file defines the .cfg file format. During VoIProvision run-time, the mapped tags in the template file are associated to actual values that are read from the csv file.
- Currently only a single tag can be defined per line record in the template file.
- The .cfg file name should represent the string of one of the predefined tags in order to generate a separate .cfg file per csv line record (e.g., [mac].cfg).

## 4.6 Using the Encryption Tool

This section shows how to use the Encryption tool.

### 4.6.1 Encrypting Configuration Files

This section shows how to encrypt the Configuration File. For example, you may wish to encrypt the configuration file when it is send over an unsecure network.

#### ➤ To encrypt the configuration file:

- At the command line prompt, specify the following:

```
encryption_tool.exe -f <filename>.cfg
```

where <file name>.cfg specifies the name of the Configuration file that you wish to encrypt.

Once the Configuration file is encrypted, it receives the suffix '.cfx' (e.g. Conf.cfx). This is the file that you should specify in the 'Configuration URL' and the 'Dynamic Configuration URL' fields when performing automatic provisioning (see Part II 'Automatic Provisioning').

## 4.6.2 Encrypting Passwords in the Configuration File

This section shows how to encrypt IP phone passwords used in the configuration process, for example, the 'System' password and the 'SIP Authentication' password.

➤ **To encrypt passwords:**

1. At the command line prompt, specify the following:

```
encryption_tool.exe -s <password_string>
```

where *<password\_string>* specifies the string of the password that you wish to encrypt.

Once the password is encrypted, a string is generated with the following syntax:

```
{"<encrypted_string>"}
```

For example:

```
{"0qrNRpSJ6aE="}
```

2. Copy the generated string (including the {" "}) with the syntax specified above to the relevant parameter in the Configuration file.

For example, if you encrypted the SIP authentication password, the following is displayed in the relevant line in the configuration file:

```
voip/line/0/auth_password={"0qrNRpSJ6aE="}
```



**Note:** It's recommended to encrypt the 'System' password using this procedure. If you choose not to, the 'System' password is by default encrypted using MD5.

## 5 IP Phone Management Server

Administrators can provision an enterprise's IP phones using Genesys' IP Phone Management Server. This section shows how to set up the IP Phone Management Server.



**Note:** For detailed information on using the IP Phone Management Server user interface to provision phones, see the Audiocodes *IP Phone Management Server Administrator's Manual*.

The Genesys IP Phone can also be provisioned by using Genesys Feature Server. See the SIP Feature Server Administration Guide and video on the Genesys documentation website.

➤ **To configure the server using the Configuration File:**

1. Open the Configuration File page in the Web interface (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** > **Configuration File**).
2. Configure the server parameters using the table below as reference.

**Table 5-1: IP Phone Management Server Parameters**

Parameter	Description
[ems_server/keep_alive_period]	The server sends a keep alive message at a configured interval to verify that its link with the network is operating. If no reply is received, the link is determined to be down or not working. Default: 60 seconds
[ems_server/provisioning/url]	Defines the URL of the EMS Server, for example, http://10.1.8.23:8081
[ems_server/user_name]	Defines the username of the administrator who'll use the EMS Server for provisioning, for example, John Smith.
[ems_server/user_password]	Defines the password (encrypted) of the administrator who'll use the EMS Server for provisioning, for example, {"Y6QYmP53BDkoTvulFjEBuQ=="}

## 6 Configuring TR-069 Management

To connect to the remote management server, you must configure the phone's embedded TR-069 client. TR-069 management can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure TR-069 using the Web interface:**

1. Access the TR-069 page (**Management** tab > **Remote Management** menu > **TR-069**).

**Figure 6-1: Web Interface - TR-069**

2. Configure TR-069 parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure TR-069 using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 6-1: TR-069 Management Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Activate [management/tr069/enabled]	Enables TR-069. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This feature can be enabled only if the valid key is provided in the 'feature key' field.
Activation Key [management/tr069/activation_key]	Activation key to enable TR-069 management.
ACS URL [management/tr069/acs_url]	URL for connecting the device to the ACS. <b>Note:</b> This parameter must be in the form of a valid HTTP or HTTPS URL.
User [management/tr069/user_name]	Username used to authenticate the device when making a connection to the ACS.
Password [management/tr069/password]	Password used to authenticate the device when making a connection to the ACS.
Request Connection User [management/tr069/connection_request/user_name]	Username to authenticate an ACS making a Connection Request to the device.

Parameter	Description
Request Connection Password <b>[management/tr069/connection_request/password]</b>	Password to authenticate an ACS making a Connection Request to the device.
Periodic Inform <b>[management/tr069/inform/enabled]</b>	Determines whether or not the device must periodically send device information to the ACS using the <b>Inform method</b> call. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li></ul>
Periodic Inform Interval <b>[management/tr069/inform/interval]</b>	The duration (in seconds) of the interval for which the device must attempt to connect with the ACS and call the <b>Inform method</b> if TR-069 is enabled ( <b>management/tr069/inform/enabled</b> ). The valid range is 0 to 86400. The default is 3600.



# Part II

## Automatic Provisioning

## 7 Introduction

By default, the IP phone is ready for out-of-the-box deployment using its automatic provisioning capabilities.

The IP phone offers a built-in mechanism for automatically upgrading its software image and updating its configuration. This method is used to upgrade the phone firmware and update its configuration, by remotely downloading an updated software image and configuration file.

The automatic update mechanism helps you keep your software image and configuration up-to-date, by performing routine checks for newer software versions and configuration files, as well as allowing you to perform manual checks.

The automatic update mechanism is as follows:

- Before connecting the phone, verify that the provisioning server is running and that the firmware and configuration files are located in the correct location.
- Connect your phone to the IP network, and then connect the phone to the power outlet.
- During DHCP negotiation, the phone requests for DHCP options 66/67/160 to receive provisioning information. The DHCP server should respond with Option 160 providing the provisioning URL or Options 66 and 67 providing the TFTP IP address and firmware file name respectively.
- The phone then checks whether new firmware is available by checking the firmware file header. If the version is different from the one currently running on the phone, the phone downloads the complete image and burns it to its flash memory.
- If a new firmware is unavailable, the phone then checks whether a new configuration is available. If a configuration file is available on the server, the phone downloads it and updates the phone's configuration after verifying that the configuration file is related to the phone model. When a configuration update is needed, the phone might reboot.



### Note:

- In the DHCP Discover message, the phone publishes its model name in Option fields 60 and 77 (e.g., 420HD). If the administrator wants to provide different provisioning information to different phone models, the administrator can set up a policy in the DHCP server according to the phone model name.
- If the phone is powered off for some reason during the firmware upgrade process, the phone will be unusable and the recovery process must be performed (see Section 47 on page 198).
- You can only use firmware files with an *.img* extension and configuration files with a *.cfg* extension.
- To "force" the firmware or configuration file to be retrieved immediately regardless of the 'Check Period' value, click the **Check Now** button on the relevant page on the Web interface.
- An additional auto-provisioning mechanism is supported if the provisioning environment does not provide all the required information (e.g. DHCP options).



**Note:** Automatic mass provisioning of IP phones using the DHCP provisioning method can alternatively be performed from the AudioCodes EMS Provisioning Server in the IP Phones Management Server. For detailed information, see the AudioCodes *IP Phone Management Server Administrator's Manual*.

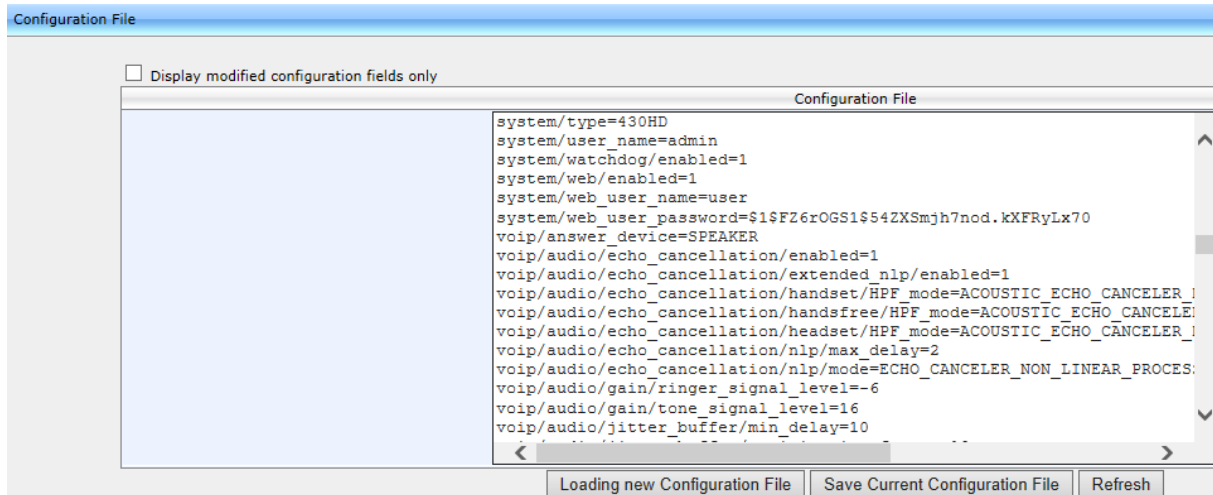
## 8 Updating the Configuration File Manually

The phone enables you to view, save, and load its configuration file to backup and restore the current configuration.

➤ **To manually update the Configuration File:**

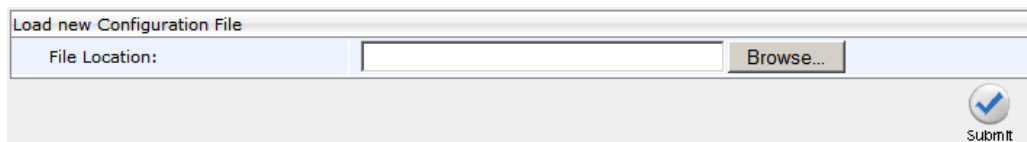
1. Access the Configuration File page (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** menu > **Configuration File**). The current configuration file settings are displayed in the text pane.

**Figure 8-1: Web Interface - Configuration File**



2. Click the **Loading new Configuration File** button; the following page appears:

**Figure 8-2: Web Interface - Load New Configuration File**



3. Click the **Browse** button and then select the required configuration file located on your local PC; the phone verifies that the configuration file is related to the phone model. The configuration file is then loaded to the phone. Once loaded, the phone reboots (indicated by a message displayed on the phone's screen). The phone is now updated with the new configuration.



**Note:** The configuration file name must have the extension .cfg.

➤ **To save the Configuration File:**

- In the Configuration File page, click the **Saving Current Configuration File** button, and then save the current phone configuration file to a folder on your local PC.



**Note:** When creating a new configuration file, make sure the **system/type** parameter in the configuration file is set to the correct phone model.

## 9 Setting up Network for Auto Provisioning

The phone supports dynamic VLAN discovery, dynamic IP addressing (DHCP), and NTP (as client).



**Note:** For manual configuration of Network Settings, see Section 14 on page 60.

## 10 Obtaining Firmware and Configuration Files

The Web interface allows you to:

- Automatically update firmware and configuration files
- Manually update firmware and configuration files

### 10.1 Provisioning Hunt Order

The IP phone always attempts to use the *first* provisioning method listed below (DHCP Option 160). If it cannot use this method, it attempts to use the second method listed below, and so on, until it reaches a successful provisioning method. This is called the provisioning 'hunt order'. The 'hunt order' is:

1. DHCP Option 160 (see Section [10.2.1](#))
2. DHCP Options 66-67 (see Section [10.2.2](#))
3. DHCP Options 43 (see Section [10.2.3](#))
4. SIP SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY Messages (see Section [10.2.4](#))
5. Static and Globally Accessible Domain (see Section [10.2.50](#))
6. Cached Addresses of the Last Provisioning Server Used on Reboots (see Section [10.2.6](#))
7. AudioCodes Redirect server (see Section [10.2.7](#))

### 10.2 Dynamic URL Provisioning

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) can be used to automatically provision the phone. The DHCP feature can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure DHCP using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Automatic Update page (**Management** tab > **Automatic Update** menu > **Automatic Provisioning**).

**Figure 10-1: Web Interface - Automatic Provisioning – Dynamic URL**

The screenshot shows the 'Automatic Provisioning' web interface. It includes the following fields and controls:

- Firmware Version :** 2.2.4.46
- Provisioning Method :** A dropdown menu currently set to 'DHCP Options (Dynamic URL)'.
- Dynamic Firmware URL :** A text field with the message 'No valid provisioning URL was provided' and a 'Check Now' button.
- Dynamic Configuration URL :** A text field with the message 'No valid provisioning URL was provided' and a 'Check Now' button.
- DHCP Option Value :** A text field containing the value '160'.
- Check Period :** A dropdown menu set to 'Daily'.
- Every day at :** A time selection dropdown set to '00:00'.
- Random Provisioning Time :** A text field containing '120' with the unit 'minutes'.

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure DHCP using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 10-1: DHCP Automatic Provisioning Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Provisioning Method <b>[provisioning/method]</b>	<p>Defines the provisioning method:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[Disable]</b> Disable - Automatic update is disabled. The phone attempts to upgrade its firmware and configuration</li> <li>▪ <b>[Dynamic]</b> DHCP Options (Dynamic URL) (default) - Using DHCP option 160 as well as option 66/67 for provisioning</li> <li>▪ <b>[Static]</b> Static URL - Using Static URL for provisioning</li> </ul>
DHCP Option Value <b>[provisioning/url_option_value]</b>	<p>Determines the DHCP option number to be used for receiving the URL for provisioning. The default value is 160.</p> <p>The phone supports DHCP Option 160 for complete URL as well as Options 66/67 for TFTP usage. Option 160 has the highest priority and if absent, Options 66/67 are used.</p> <p>The following syntax is available for DHCP option 160:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;</li> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;/&lt;firmware file name&gt;</li> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;/&lt;firmware file name&gt;;&lt;configuration file name&gt;</li> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;;&lt;configuration file name&gt;</li> </ul> <p>Where &lt;protocol&gt; can be one of the following: <b>ftp</b>, <b>tftp</b>, <b>http</b> or <b>https</b>.</p> <p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>ftp://192.168.2.1</b> – retrieved firmware file is <i>420HD.img</i> and the configuration file name is &lt;MAC address&gt;.cfg. For example, 001122334455.cfg</li> <li>▪ <b>tftp://192.168.2.1/different_firmware_name.img</b> - retrieved firmware file is <i>Different_Firmware_Name.img</i> and the configuration file name is &lt;MAC address&gt;.cfg. For example, 001122334455.cfg</li> <li>▪ <b>http://192.168.2.1/different_firmware_name.img ; &lt;MODEL&gt; &lt;MAC&gt;_conf.cfg</b> - retrieved firmware file is <i>different_firmware_name.img</i> and the configuration file name is &lt;Model type&gt;_&lt;MAC address&gt;_conf.cfg. For example, <b>420HD_001122334455_conf.cfg</b></li> <li>▪ <b>https://192.168.2.1/&lt;MODEL&gt;_&lt;MAC&gt;_conf.cfg</b> - if the model is 420HD, the retrieved firmware file is <i>420HD.img</i> and the configuration file name is</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	<p>420HD_&lt;MAC Address&gt;_conf.cfg. For example, 420HD_001122334455_conf.cfg</p> <p>The following syntax is available for DHCP Options 66/67:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Option 66 must be a valid IP address or host name of a TFTP server only.</li> <li>Option 67 must be the firmware name.</li> </ul> <p>If Option 67 is absent, the phone requests for the 420HD.img image file. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Option 66:</b> 192.168.2.1 or myTFTPServer</li> <li><b>Option 67:</b> 420HD_2.2.2.img</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This parameter is applicable only when <b>method</b> is configured to <b>Dynamic</b>.</li> <li>It is recommended to leave the parameter at its default value to avoid conflict with other DHCP options settings.</li> </ul>
Random Provisioning Time [provisioning/random_provisioning_time]	<p>Defines the maximum random number to start the provisioning process.</p> <p>This is used for periodic checking of firmware and configuration files to avoid multiple devices from starting the upgrade process at the same time. When the device is meant to start the upgrade, the device randomly selects a number between 1 and the value set for <b>random_provisioning_time</b> and performs the check only after the random time.</p> <p>The valid range is 0-65535. The default value is 120.</p>
Check Period [provisioning/period/type]	<p>Defines the period type for automatic provisioning:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>[hourly]</b> Hourly - Sets an interval in hours.</li> <li><b>[daily]</b> Daily (default) - Sets an hour in the day.</li> <li><b>[weekly]</b> Weekly - Sets a day in the week and an hour in the day.</li> <li><b>[powerup]</b> On Power-up Only - The phone tries to upgrade only after power-up.</li> </ul>
Every (Check Period = Hourly) [provisioning/period/hourly/hours_interval]	<p>The interval in hours for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files.</p> <p>The valid range is 1 to 168. The default is 24.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only when <b>type</b> is configured to <b>hourly</b>.</p>
Every day at [provisioning/period/daily/time]	<p>The hour in the day for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files.</p> <p>The format of this value is <b>hh:mm</b>, where <b>hh</b> is hour and <b>mm</b> is minutes. For example, 00 : 30 .</p> <p>The default time is <b>00:00</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only when <b>type</b> is configured to <b>daily</b>.</p>

Parameter	Description
Every (Check Period = Day) [provisioning/period/weekly/day]	<p>The day in the week for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[Sunday]</b> Sunday (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[Monday]</b> Monday</li> <li>▪ <b>[Tuesday]</b> Tuesday</li> <li>▪ <b>[Wednesday]</b> Wednesday</li> <li>▪ <b>[Thursday]</b> Thursday</li> <li>▪ <b>[Friday]</b> Friday</li> <li>▪ <b>[Saturday]</b> Saturday</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only when <b>type</b> is configured to <b>weekly</b>.</p>
Every (Check Period = Weekly) [provisioning/period/weekly/time]	<p>The hour in the day for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files.</p> <p>The format of this value is: <b>hh:mm</b>, where <b>hh</b> is hour and <b>mm</b> is minutes. For example: 00 : 30</p> <p>The default time is <b>00:00</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only when <b>type</b> is configured to <b>weekly</b>.</p>

## 10.2.1 Provisioning using DHCP Option 160

Phones can get a provisioning URL from DHCP Option 160, 66/67 or 43. Option 160 has the highest priority, following by Option 66/67, and then Option 43. DHCP Option 160 can be configured using the Web interface.

➤ To configure DHCP Option 160 using the Web interface:

1. Access the Automatic Update page (**Management** tab > **Automatic Update** menu > **Automatic Provisioning**).

Figure 10-2: Web Interface - Automatic Provisioning - DHCP Option 160

The screenshot shows the 'Automatic Provisioning' web interface. At the top, it says 'Automatic Provisioning'. Below that, there's a section for 'Firmware Version : 2.2.4.46'. The 'Provisioning Method :' is set to 'DHCP Options (Dynamic URL)'. Below this, there are two fields: 'Dynamic Firmware URL :' and 'Dynamic Configuration URL :', both with the message 'No valid provisioning URL was provided'. To the right of these fields are 'Check Now' buttons. Below these, the 'DHCP Option Value :' is set to '160'. The 'Check Period :' is set to 'Daily'. The 'Every day at :' is set to '00:00'. The 'Random Provisioning Time :' is set to '120 minutes'.

2. From the 'Provisioning Method' dropdown, select **DHCP Option (Dynamic URL)**.
3. In the 'DHCP Option Value' field, enter **160**.
4. Configure the remaining parameters, and then click **Submit**.
5. After reboot, confirm that the firmware and configuration files have been updated.

## 10.2.2 Provisioning using DHCP Option 66/67

Phones can get a provisioning URL from DHCP Option 66/67. Option 160 has the highest priority, following by Option 66/67, and then Option 43. The table below shows the behaviors for Option 66/67.

**Table 10-2: Auto Provisioning via DHCP Option 66/67**

	Option 66	Option 67	Result	Comment
1	Doesn't exist or empty	Any	No URL from Option 66/67	When Option 66 doesn't exist, or it's empty, the phone cannot get a URL from Option 66/67.
2	Server address exists but there is no protocol header such as TFTP, FTP, HTTP, HTTPS. File names do not exist.  Example: <b>Genesys.com</b> <b>192.168.0.11</b>	Non-existent	<b>Firmware URL:</b> Tftp://genesys.com/<hardware type>.img <b>Configuration file url:</b> Tftp://genesys.com/.<mac>cfg	When protocol is not specified, tftp is added as the default protocol.
		Contains names.  Example: <b>abc.img;efg.cfg</b>	<b>Firmware URL:</b> Tftp://genesys.com/abc.img <b>Configuration file URL:</b> Tftp://genesys.com/efg.cfg	
3	Server address exists File names do not exist.  Example: http://Genesys.com http://192.168.0.11	Non-existent	<b>Firmware URL:</b> http://genesys.com/<hardware type>.img <b>Configuration file URL:</b> http://genesys.com/.<mac>cfg	
		Contains names.  Example: <b>abc.img;efg.cfg</b>	<b>Firmware URL:</b> http://genesys.com/abc.img <b>Configuration file URL:</b> http://genesys.com/efg.cfg	
4	Server address exists. File names exist. Example: http://Genesys.com/abc.image;efg.cfg	Any	<b>Firmware URL:</b> http://genesys.com/abc.img <b>Configuration file URL:</b> http://genesys.com/efg.cfg	If any file name exists in Option 66, the names in Option 67 are ignored.

➤ **To operate with DHCP Options 66 and 67:**

- Configure DHCP Options 66 and 67 in the DHCP server, instead of configuring Option 160. See the DHCP server related documentation for detailed information.

## 10.2.3 Provisioning using DHCP Option 43

Phones can get a provisioning URL from DHCP Option 43. Option 160 has the highest priority, following by Option 66/67, and then Option 43.

➤ **To operate with DHCP Options 43:**

- Configure DHCP Options 43 in the DHCP server. Use the example in the figure below as reference.

Figure 10-3: Provisioning using DHCP Option 43 in the DHCP Server

**Scope Options**

General | **Advanced**

Available Options: ☐ 040 NIS Domain Name, ☐ 041 NIS Servers, ☒ 042 NTP Servers, ☒ 043 Vendor Specific Info

Description: Name of Ne, Addresses c, Addresses c, Embedded v

Data entry:

Data:	Binary:	ASCII:
0000 01 27	74 66 74 70 3A 2F	. 'tftp:/'
0008 2F 31 39 32 2E 31 36 38		/192.168
0010 2E 32 30 32 2E 31 30 33		.202.103
0018 2F 74 65 73 74 2E 69 6D		/test.im
0020 67 3B 74 65 73 74 2E 63		g;test.c
0028 66 67		fg

OK Cancel Apply



**Note:**

- **01** is the sub option
- **27** is the length (in HEX) of the provisioning path string that you configured
- The remainder is the provisioning path, in ASCII code.  
Example: **tftp://192.168.202.103/test.img;test.cfg**

## 10.2.4 SIP SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY Messages

If the provisioning information (e.g. Option fields 66/67/160) is not provided by the DHCP server, the phone sends a SIP SUBSCRIBE message to the multicast address **224.0.1.75:5060** as shown below.



**Note:** If the provisioning server supports using SIP SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY messages and the device receives the provisioning URL in the NOTIFY message, the automatic provisioning mechanism then periodically tries to retrieve a new firmware/configuration according to the information provided.

```
SUBSCRIBE sip:224.0.1.75:5060 SIP/2.0
From:
<sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>;tag=87a5a8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d
4398-66dc40c-386d4398
To: <sip:224.0.1.75:5060>
Call-ID: 8884c8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d4398-3e2bcb8e-386d4398
CSeq: 1 SUBSCRIBE
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP
10.13.2.37:5060;rport;branch=z9hG4bK-386d4398-6ad00ca2-7ca3606e
Expires: 0
Event:
ua-profile;profile-type="application";model="420HD";version="2.2.2"
Max-Forwards: 70
Supported: replaces,100rel
Accept: application/url
Contact: <sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>
User-Agent: AUDC-IPPhone/2.2.2
Content-Length: 0
```

The provisioning server or any other entity replies with a 200 OK message to the SUBSCRIBE message (see below) and sends a NOTIFY SIP message with the provisioning URL in the message body as shown below. (The provisioning URL can be in any format as described in the Administrator's Manual).

If no response is received by the provisioning server, the phone resends SUBSCRIBE messages for five seconds.

With the above method, the phone uses its built-in auto-provisioning mechanism while the provisioning information is retrieved through the NOTIFY message.

The following code describes **SIP 200 OK Response on the SUBSCRIBE Message**:

```
SIP/2.0 200 OK
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP
10.13.2.37:5060;rport;branch=z9hG4bK-386d4398-6ad00ca2-7ca3606e
Contact: <sip:10.13.2.37:5060>
To: <sip:224.0.1.75:5060>
From:
<sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>;tag=87a5a8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d
4398-66dc40c-386d4398
Call-ID: 8884c8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d4398-3e2bcb8e-386d4398
CSeq: 1 SUBSCRIBE
Expires: 0
Content-Length: 0
```

The following code describes **SIP NOTIFY Message with Provisioning Information.**

```
NOTIFY sip:10.13.2.37:5060 SIP/2.0
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP
10.13.2.37:5060;rport;branch=z9hG4bK-386d4398-6ad00ca2-7ca3606e
Max-Forwards: 20
Contact: <sip:10.13.4.121:5060>
To: <sip:224.0.1.75:5060>
From:
<sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>;tag=87a5a8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d
4398-66dc40c-386d4398
Call-ID: 8884c8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d4398-3e2bcb8e-386d4398
CSeq: 1 NOTIFY
Content-Type: application/url
Subscription-State: terminated;reason=timeout
Event:
ua-profile;profile-type="application";model="420HD";version="2.2.2"
Content-Length: 18
tftp://10.13.4.121
```

The following code describes **SIP SUBSCRIBE Message to Obtain Provisioning Information.**

```
SUBSCRIBE sip:224.0.1.75:5060 SIP/2.0
From:
<sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>;tag=87a5a8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d
4398-66dc40c-386d4398
To: <sip:224.0.1.75:5060>
Call-ID: 8884c8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d4398-3e2bcb8e-386d4398
CSeq: 1 SUBSCRIBE
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP
10.13.2.37:5060;rport;branch=z9hG4bK-386d4398-6ad00ca2-7ca3606e
Expires: 0
Event:
ua-profile;profile-type="application";model="420HD";version="2.2.2"
Max-Forwards: 70
Supported: replaces,100rel
Accept: application/url
Contact: <sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>
User-Agent: AUDC-IPPhone/2.2.2
Content-Length: 0
```

The provisioning server or any other entity replies with a 200 OK message to the SUBSCRIBE message (see below) and sends a NOTIFY SIP message with the provisioning URL in the message body as shown below. (The provisioning URL can be in any format as described in the Administrator's Manual).

If no response is received by the provisioning server, the phone resends SUBSCRIBE messages for 5 seconds.

With the above method, the phone uses its built-in auto-provisioning mechanism while the provisioning information is retrieved through the NOTIFY message.

The following code describes **SIP 200 OK Response on the SUBSCRIBE Message.**

```
SIP/2.0 200 OK
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP
10.13.2.37:5060;rport;branch=z9hG4bK-386d4398-6ad00ca2-7ca3606e
```

```
Contact: <sip:10.13.2.37:5060>
To: <sip:224.0.1.75:5060>
From:
<sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>;tag=87a5a8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d
4398-66dc40c-386d4398
Call-ID: 8884c8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d4398-3e2bcb8e-386d4398
CSeq: 1 SUBSCRIBE
Expires: 0
Content-Length: 0
```

The following code describes **SIP NOTIFY Message with Provisioning Information.**

```
NOTIFY sip:10.13.2.37:5060 SIP/2.0
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP
10.13.2.37:5060;rport;branch=z9hG4bK-386d4398-6ad00ca2-7ca3606e
Max-Forwards: 20
Contact: <sip:10.13.4.121:5060>
To: <sip:224.0.1.75:5060>
From:
<sip:00000001@10.13.2.37:5060>;tag=87a5a8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d
4398-66dc40c-386d4398
Call-ID: 8884c8-25020d0a-13c4-50029-386d4398-3e2bcb8e-386d4398
CSeq: 1 NOTIFY
Content-Type: application/url
Subscription-State: terminated;reason=timeout
Event:
ua-profile;profile-type="application";model="420HD";version="2.2.2"
Content-Length: 18
tftp://10.13.4.121
```

## 10.2.5 Hardcoded Domain Name for Provisioning Server

If no higher-priority provisioning method applied, the phone automatically searches in the DNS server for the domain named "ProvisioningServer". After the DNS server gives the domain IP address, the phone contacts the provisioning server. The phone tries to retrieve firmware and configuration files using URL **tftp://ProvisioningServer/<Phone Model Name>/**

For example:

- The phone tries to obtain the following firmware file:  
**tftp://ProvisioningServer/420HD.img**  
where **420** is optional; if omitted, the phone will try to retrieve the firmware file according to its model name.
- The phone tries to obtain the following configuration file:  
**tftp://ProvisioningServer/<MAC address>.cfg**  
where **MAC address** is optional; if omitted, the phone will try to retrieve the configuration file according to its MAC address.  
(e.g. tftp://ProvisioningServer/420HD/001122334455.cfg)

The network administrator must configure a DNS entry called "ProvisioningServer" on the DNS server and set it to the TFTP server IP address.



**Note:** If Generic Domain Name is used, the automatic provisioning mechanism periodically tries to retrieve new firmware/configuration from Provisioning Server domain name.

## 10.2.6 Cached Address of Last Provisioning Server Used

These are the addresses of the last provisioning servers used, stored in cache memory.

When the device starts up and connects to the provisioning server, it can pull firmware, configuration and private label files from the provisioning server using the cached address of the last provisioning server used.

After the IP phone creates a successful connection with a provisioning server, this server's address is cached by the IP phone. The next time the IP phone is rebooted, if it doesn't receive provisioning details, the device performs provisioning using the cached IP address.

## 10.2.7 Redirect Server

You can use the AudioCodes Redirect server to direct you to the appropriate Provisioning server URL to download the relevant configuration and firmware files.

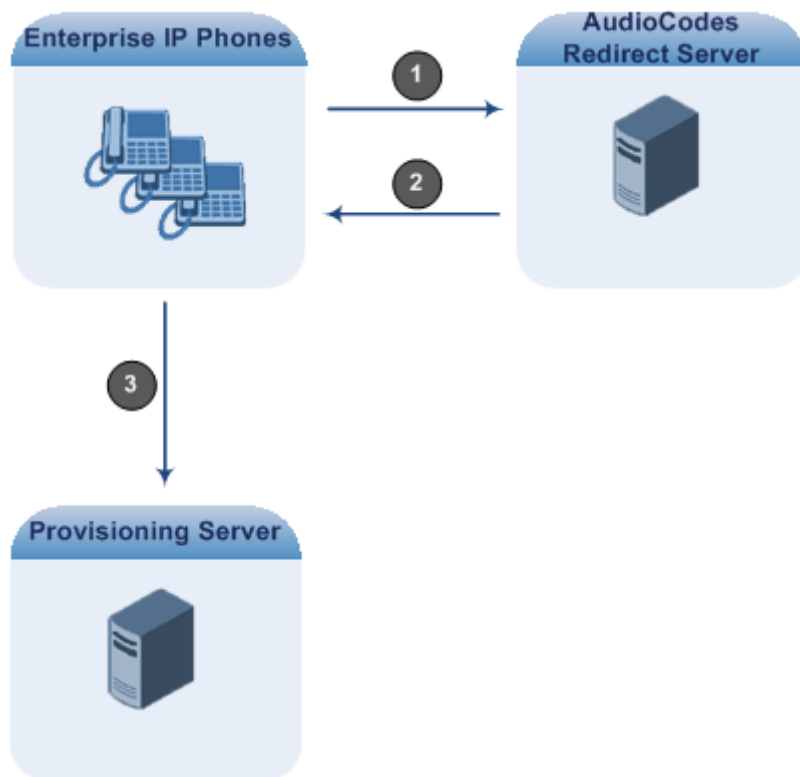
Once the IP phone is powered up and network connectivity is established, it automatically request for provisioning information. In case it does not obtain these files according to the regular provisioning hunt order methods (see Section 10.1), it sends an HTTPS request to the AudioCodes HTTPS Redirect server. The server responds to the IP phone with an HTTPS Redirect response containing the URL of the Provisioning server where the firmware and configuration files are located. Once the IP phone has successfully connected to the Provisioning server URL, the Automatic Update mechanism can commence.



**Note:**

- The MAC addresses of the IP phones and the Provisioning server's URL are pre-configured on the HTTPS Redirect server. For more information, contact AudioCodes support.
- The default URL of the Redirect server is:  
provisioning/redirect\_server\_url=https://redirect.audiocodes.com  
This address can be reconfigured if required.

**Figure 10-4: Redirect Server Configuration Process**



1. Device sends HTTPS request to AudioCodes HTTPS Redirect server.
2. Redirect server sends HTTPS response with redirect URL of the Provisioning server.
3. IP phone sends request to redirected URL (i.e., Provisioning server).

For security, communication between the IP phone and the HTTPS Redirect server is encrypted (HTTPS) and uses the pre-installed AudioCodes factory-set certificate (see Section 32) to authenticate itself with the HTTPS Redirect server and to verify authenticity of the latter. If the redirect URL (where the configuration file is stored) also uses the HTTPS protocol, the IP phone can use a regular certificate or the AudioCodes factory-set certificate to authenticate itself and to validate the server's certificate if a trusted root certificate (regular) is configured.



**Note:** The IP phone repeats the redirect process whenever it undergoes a reset to factory defaults.

## 10.3 Static URL Provisioning

This section shows how to configure the phone using the Static URL method.

➤ **To configure static provisioning information using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Automatic Provisioning page (**Management** tab > **Automatic Update** menu > **Automatic Provisioning**).

**Figure 10-5: Web Interface - Automatic Provisioning – Static URL**

The screenshot shows the 'Automatic Provisioning' web interface. The 'Provisioning Method' is set to 'Static URL'. The 'Firmware URL' is 'ftp://10.13.2.5/pilot\_430.img'. The 'Configuration URL' is empty. The 'Check Period' is 'Daily'. The 'Every day at' time is '00:00'. The 'Random Provisioning Time' is '120 minutes'. There are 'Check Now' buttons for both the Firmware URL and Configuration URL fields.

Firmware Version :	2.2.4.46	
Provisioning Method :	Static URL	
Firmware URL :	ftp://10.13.2.5/pilot_430.img	Check Now
Configuration URL :		Check Now
Check Period :	Daily	
Every day at :	00:00	
Random Provisioning Time :	120	minutes

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ To configure static provisioning information using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 10-3: Static URL Automatic Provisioning Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Provisioning Method <b>[provisioning/method]</b>	<p>Defines the provisioning method:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[Disable]</b> Disable - Automatic update is disabled. The phone attempts to upgrade its firmware and configuration</li> <li>▪ <b>[Dynamic]</b> DHCP Options (Dynamic URL) (default) - Using DHCP Option 160 and Options 66/67 for provisioning</li> <li>▪ <b>[Static]</b> Static URL - Using Static URL for provisioning</li> </ul>
Firmware URL <b>[provisioning/firmware/url]</b>	<p>The static URL for checking the firmware file. The URL must be entered using one of the following syntax options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;</li> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;/&lt;firmware file name&gt;</li> </ul> <p>Where&lt;protocol&gt; can be one of the following protocols: <b>ftp</b>, <b>tftp</b>, <b>http</b> or <b>https</b>. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ tftp://192.168.2.1 – retrieved firmware file is420HD.img</li> <li>▪ ftp://192.168.2.1/Different_Firmware_Name.img - retrieved firmware file is Different_Firmware_Name.img</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only when 'method' is configured to <b>Static</b>.</p>
Configuration URL <b>[provisioning/configuration/url]</b>	<p>The static URL for checking the configuration file. The URL must be entered using one of the following syntax options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;</li> <li>▪ &lt;protocol&gt;://&lt;server IP address or host name&gt;/&lt;configuration file name&gt;</li> </ul> <p>Where&lt;protocol&gt; can be one of the following protocols: "ftp", "tftp", "http" or "https". For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ http://192.168.2.1 - configuration file name is &lt;MAC Address&gt;.cfg, for example, 001122334455.cfg</li> <li>▪ https://192.168.2.1/420HD_&lt;MAC&gt;_conf.cfg - retrieved configuration file name is 420HD_&lt;MAC Address&gt;_conf.cfg, for example, 420HD_001122334455_conf.cfg</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only when 'method' is configured to <b>Static</b>.</p>



# **Part III**

## **Quick Setup**

# 11 Quick Setup

The Web interface provides a Quick Setup page that lets you configure basic features to quickly set up your IP Phone to operational level.



**Note:** For Quick Setup parameters descriptions, see [Part IV \(Networking\)](#) and [Part V \(VoIP Features\)](#).

➤ **To quickly set up your phone:**

1. Access the Quick Setup page (**Configuration** tab > **Quick Setup** menu > **Quick Setup**).

**Figure 11-1: Web Interface - Quick Setup**

The screenshot shows the 'Quick Setup' web interface. It is divided into three main sections:

- LAN Setup:** Includes fields for IP Type (Static IP or Automatic IP (DHCP)), IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway Address, Primary DNS, and Secondary DNS. All IP fields are currently set to 0.0.0.0.
- SIP Proxy and Registrar:** Includes fields for Use SIP Proxy (Enable), Proxy IP Address or Host Name (10.37.4.204), Proxy Port (5060), Use SIP Proxy IP and Port for Registration (Enable), and Use SIP Registrar (Disable).
- Line Settings:** Includes fields for Line Number (1), Line 1 Activate (Enable), Line 1 Display Name (allen), Line 1 User ID (7000), Line 1 Authentication User Name (7000), Line 1 Authentication Password (masked with dots), and Line 1 Mode (Private).

2. For a description of the parameters on this page, refer to the following:
  - Parameters under the **LAN Setup** group, see [Section 14.1.2](#) on page [63](#).
  - Parameters under the **SIP Proxy and Registrar** group see [Section 17.2](#) on page [73](#).
  - Parameters under the **Line Settings** group, see [Section 22.2](#) on page [114](#).



# Part IV

## Networking

## 12 Introduction

This section shows how to configure network settings *manually*, if required.



**Note:** By default, the network settings are set for *automatic provisioning*. However, if you need to change them, you can do so *manually*, as described in this section.

## 13 Configuring Date and Time Manually



**Note:** By default, date and time settings are *automatically provisioned* via the enterprise DHCP server when the phone is connected to the Internet and to the power supply, but you can *manually* change them if required. This section shows how.

The phone automatically retrieves date and time from a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server when connected to the internet. To configure the NTP server for automatic provisioning of date and time, see Section 13.2. NTP is a protocol for distributing Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) by synchronizing the clocks of computer systems over packet-switched, variable-latency data networks. Date/time can also be *manually* configured in the Web interface.

➤ **To manually configure date and time using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Date and Time page (**Configuration** tab > **Advanced Applications** menu > **Date and Time**).

**Figure 13-1: Web Interface - Date and Time**

NTP & Time Settings	
Active :	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable
Set System Time:	2015 - 03 - 23 15 : 49 (YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM)
Time Display Format:	24 Hours
Date Display Format:	European

2. Configure the 'Set System Time' parameter.
3. Set the 'Time Display Format' to **24 Hours** or **12 Hours**
4. Set the 'Date Display Format' to **European** or **American**. Refer to the table below.
5. Click **Submit**.

- To configure date and time using the Configuration File:
  - Use the table below as reference.

Table 13-1: Date Display Format

Parameter	Description
Date Display Format [system/ntp/date_display_format]	Select either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>EUROPEAN</b> (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>AMERICAN</b></li> </ul> The European date format is DDMMYYYY. The American format is MMDDYYYY.

## 13.1 Configuring Daylight Saving Time

You can configure Daylight Saving Time using the Web interface or Configuration File.

- To configure Daylight Saving Time using the Web interface:
  1. Access the Date and Time page (**Configuration** tab > **Advanced Applications** menu > **Date and Time**) as described above.
  2. Set the 'Active' parameter to **Enable**; the page shown below opens.

Figure 13-2: Web Interface - NTP & Time Settings

▼NTP & Time Settings

Active :	Enable ▼
Obtain Time Zone from DHCP :	Enable ▼
Primary Server:	ntp.ucsd.edu[US] ▼
Secondary Server:	ntp.cis.strath.ac.uk[UK] ▼
Update Interval:	0 : 12 (Days:Hours)
Time Display Format:	24 Hours ▼
Date Display Format:	European ▼

3. Set the 'Obtain Time Zone from DHCP' parameter to **Disable**; the Daylight Saving Time page shown below opens:

Figure 13-3: Web Interface – Daylight Saving Time

Date And Time

▼Daylight Saving Time

Active :	Enable ▼
Date Format :	Fixed ▼
Start Time :	Jan ▼ 1 ▼ 02 : 00
End Time :	Jan ▼ 1 ▼ 02 : 00
Offset :	60 Minutes

4. Configure the settings using the table below as reference.

➤ **To configure Daylight Saving Time using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 13-2: Daylight Saving Time Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Active [system/daylight_saving/activate]	Determines whether the phone automatically detects the Daylight Saving Time for the selected Time Zone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[DISABLE]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[ENABLE]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Start Time [system/daylight_saving/start_date]	This subsection defines the starting day for the daylight saving offset. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[month]</b> - defines specific month in year</li> <li>▪ <b>[day]</b> - defines specific day in month</li> <li>▪ <b>[hour]</b> - defines specific hour in day</li> <li>▪ <b>[minute]</b> - defines specific minute in hour</li> </ul> <p>Example: To configure the phone to start daylight savings with a specific offset on February 22<sup>nd</sup> at 14:30, set the following:</p> <p><b>system/daylight_saving/start_date/month=2</b>  <b>system/daylight_saving/start_date/day=22</b>  <b>system/daylight_saving/start_date/hour=14</b>  <b>system/daylight_saving/start_date/minute=30</b></p>
Start Time [system/daylight_saving/start_date/month]	The month in a year. The valid range is 1 to 12.
Start Time [system/daylight_saving/start_date/day]	The day in a month. The valid range is 1 to 31.
Start Time [system/daylight_saving/start_date/hour]	The hour in the day. The valid range is 0 to 23.
Start Time [system/daylight_saving/start_date/minute]	The minute in an hour. The valid range is 0 to 59.
End Time [system/daylight_saving/end_date]	This subsection defines the ending day for the daylight saving offset. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[month]</b> - defines the specific month in a year</li> <li>▪ <b>[day]</b> - defines the specific day in a month</li> <li>▪ <b>[hour]</b> - defines the specific hour in a day</li> <li>▪ <b>[minute]</b> - defines the specific minute in an hour</li> </ul> <p>For example: To configure the phone to end the daylight savings on July 16<sup>th</sup> at 22:15, set the following:</p> <p><b>system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/month=7</b>  <b>system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/day=16</b>  <b>system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/hour=22</b>  <b>system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/minute=15</b></p>
End Time [system/daylight_saving/end_date/month]	The month in a year. The valid range is 1 to 12.

Parameter	Description
End Time [system/daylight_saving/end_date/day]	The day in a month. The valid range is 1 to 31.
End Time [system/daylight_saving/end_date/hour]	The hour in the day The valid range is 0 to 23.
End Time [system/daylight_saving/end_date/minute]	The minute in an hour. The valid range is 0 to 59.
Offset [system/daylight_saving/offset]	The offset value for the daylight saving. The valid range is 0 to 180. The default offset is 60.
[system/daylight_saving/mode]	Configures the daylight saving mode. Valid values are [FIXED]= Date is specified as: Month, Day of month. [DayOfWeek]= Date is specified as: Month, Week of month, Day of week.
[system/daylight_saving/start_date/week]	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The week of month (values 1-5) for start of daylight saving time.
[system/daylight_saving/start_date/day_of_week]	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The day of week for daylight saving time start Valid values : [SUNDAY] [MONDAY] [TUESDAY] [WEDNESDAY] [THURSDAY] [FRIDAY] [SATURDAY]
[system/daylight_saving/end_date/week]	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The week of month (values 1-5) for end of daylight saving time.
[system/daylight_saving/end_date/day_of_week]	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The day of week for daylight saving time start Valid values : [SUNDAY] [MONDAY] [TUESDAY] [WEDNESDAY] [THURSDAY] [FRIDAY] [SATURDAY]

## 13.2 Configuring the NTP Server

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) server can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File. When activated, date and time are automatically obtained from the NTP server.

➤ **To configure the NTP server using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Date and Time page (**Configuration** tab > **Advanced Applications** menu > **Date and Time**).
2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

**Figure 13-4: Web Interface - NTP & Time Settings**

NTP & Time Settings	
Active :	Enable
Obtain Time Zone from DHCP :	Enable
Primary Server:	ntp.ucsd.edu[US]
Secondary Server:	ntp.cis.strath.ac.uk[UK]
Update Interval:	0 : 12 (Days:Hours)
Time Display Format:	24 Hours

➤ **To configure the NTP server using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 13-3: NTP Server Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Active [system/ntp/enabled]	Enables the NTP server from which the phone automatically retrieves the date and time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable – obtains the time information automatically from a configured NTP server (default)</li> </ul>
Primary Server [system/ntp/primary_server_address]	Defines the address of the main NTP server (this can be a domain name, for example, tick.nap.com.ar).
Secondary Server [system/ntp/secondary_server_address]	Defines the address of the secondary NTP server.
Update Interval [system/ntp/sync_time]	This sub-section defines how often the phone must perform an update with the NTP server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [days] -defines the number of days</li> <li>▪ [hours] - defines the number of hours</li> </ul> For example: To configure the phone to perform an update with an NTP server every 1 day and 6 hours, set the following: system/ntp/sync_time/days=1 system/ntp/sync_time/hours=6

Parameter	Description
Update Interval [system/ntp/sync_time/days]	The number of days. The valid range is 0 to 7. The default of days is 0.
Update Interval [system/ntp/sync_time/hours]	The number of hours. The valid range is 0 to 24. The default is 12.
Time Display Format [system/ntp/time_display_format]	The format of the time displayed on the LCD screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [24Hour] (default)</li> <li>▪ [12Hour]</li> </ul>

## 13.3 Configuring NTP Server via DHCP

If the phone is set to obtain GMT offsets and NTP servers via DHCP (default), it receives the following fields in the DHCP options:

- Primary Server and Secondary Server – (Option 4 or 42).



**Note:** If both options (4 and 42) are received, priority is given to Option 42.

- Time Zone – (Option 2)

The phone sends an NTP request to the Primary NTP server. If there is no response, the NTP request is sent to the Secondary NTP server.

After obtaining the time from the server, it adds the GMT offset in Option 2. This is the updated system time.

➤ **To manually configure NTP / GMT offset via DHCP using Web interface:**

1. Access the Date and Time page (**Configuration** tab > **Advanced Applications** menu > **Date and Time**).
2. From the 'Obtain Time Zone From DHCP' drop-down list, select **Disable**.

**Figure 13-5: Web Interface - NTP and Time Settings**

Date And Time

▼Daylight Saving Time

Active :

▼NTP & Time Settings

Active :

Obtain Time Zone from DHCP :

Time Zone : (GMT 00:00) Greenwich Mean Time: Dublin,Edinburgh,Lisbon,London,Casablanca,Monrovia ▼

Primary Server:

Secondary Server:

Update Interval:  :  (Days:Hours)

Time Display Format:

3. Configure the NTP and Time Settings according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.



**Note:** These values will have no affect if TimeZone is set to be obtained from DHCP. If Time Zone and NTP server are manually set, the phone acts as described above but the values are obtained from the Configuration File and not from DHCP.

**Table 13-4: NTP Server and GMT Parameters**

Parameter	Description
[system/ntp/gmt_offset]	<p>Default: 00:00</p> <p>Enables the NTP server from which the phone retrieves the date and time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable – obtains the time information from a configured NTP server</li></ul>

## 14 Configuring IP Network Settings

The following section shows how to configure IP Network Settings including:

- Static IP Address
- Partial DHCP

### 14.1 Configuring Static IP Address

The static IP address can be configured using the following:

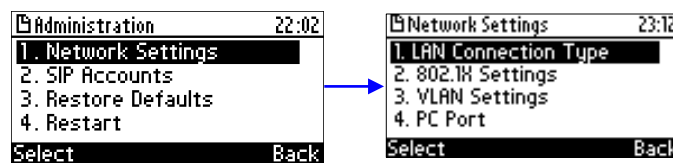
- Phone LCD
- Web interface and Configuration File

#### 14.1.1 Configuring Static IP Address using the Phone's LCD

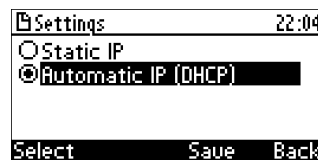
This section shows how to configure Static IP Address on the phone using the phone's LCD. The LAN connection interface can be manually defined (static IP address) or automatically provisioned using a DHCP server from where the LAN IP address is obtained.

➤ **To configure the phone's LAN connection type:**

1. Access and select the **LAN Connection Type** option (**MENU** key > **Administration** > **Network Settings**).

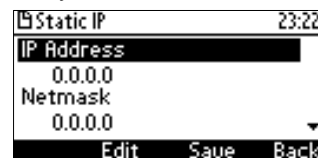


2. Navigate to and select **Static IP** or **Automatic IP (DHCP)** IP addressing scheme.

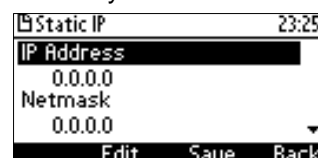


3. If you select **Static IP**, continue with the next step (Step 4); else skip to Step 5.
4. Define a static IP addressing scheme:

- a. Press the **Edit** softkey; the Static IP screen appears:



- b. To configure each required network parameter, i.e., **IP Address**, **Netmask**, **Gateway**, **Primary DNS** and **Secondary DNS**, navigate to and choose the parameter, and then press the **Edit** softkey, for example, navigate to **IP Address** and press the **Edit** softkey:



- c. Enter the new address in dotted-decimal notation, using the following keys:

- ◆ **Navigation control:** moves the cursor left or right in the IP address

- ◆ **Clear** softkey: deletes the digit to the left of the cursor.
- d. Press the **Save** and then **Apply** softkey.
- 5. Press the **Save** softkey.

## 14.1.2 Configuring IP Network Settings

This section shows how to configure IP Network settings using the Web interface or Configuration File.

The phone's LAN configuration includes defining the method for obtaining an IP address. The phone's IP address can be *static* whereby the IP address is manually entered, or *automatic* whereby the IP address is acquired from a DHCP server. For Automatic IP, you can manually define some of the main parameters.

### ➤ To define the phone's LAN settings using the Web interface:

1. Access the LAN Settings page (**Configuration** tab > **Network Connections** menu > **Network Settings**).

**Figure 14-1: Web Interface - Network Settings**

▼Network Settings		
IP Type:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Static IP <input type="radio"/> Automatic IP (DHCP)	
Domain Name:	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual
IP Address:	<input type="text" value="10.13.10.10"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual
Subnet Mask:	<input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual
Default Gateway Address:	<input type="text" value="10.13.0.1"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual
Primary DNS:	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual
Secondary DNS:	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manual
MAC Address:	<input type="text" value="00:90:8F:1E:DB:3E"/>	
LAN Port Mode:	<input type="text" value="Auto Negotiation"/>	
PC Port Mode:	<input type="text" value="Auto Negotiation"/>	

2. Configure the LAN parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ To define the phone's LAN settings using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 14-1: Network Settings Parameters**

Parameter	Description
IP Type [network/lan_type]	Defines the IP addressing method: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[STATIC]</b> Static IP (default)- Phone's IP address is defined manually</li> <li>▪ <b>[DHCP]</b> Automatic IP DHCP - Phone's IP address is acquired automatically from a DHCP server</li> </ul>
network/lan/fixed_ip	This subsection defines the relevant parameters if 'lan_type' is configured to <b>STATIC</b> or the corresponding 'network/lan/dhcp' parameter is set to 1.
IP Address [network/lan/fixed_ip/ip_address]	The LAN IP address.
Subnet Mask [network/lan/fixed_ip/netmask]	The subnet mask address.
Default Gateway Address [network/lan/fixed_ip/gateway]	The IP address of the default gateway.
Domain Name [network/lan/fixed_ip/domain_name]	The domain name.
<b>Domain Name Server (DNS)</b>	
Primary DNS [network/lan/fixed_ip/primary_dns]	The primary DNS server address.
Secondary DNS [network/lan/fixed_ip/secondary_dns]	The secondary DNS server address. The phone connects to this server if the primary DNS server is unavailable.

## 14.2 Configuring Partial DHCP

Partial DHCP can be configured with the following parameters:

**Table 14-2: Partial DHCP Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>Partial DHCP</b>	
<b>network/lan/dhcp</b>	This subsection defines the parameters to configure if 'lan_type' is configured to <b>DHCP</b> .
Domain Name - Manual <b>[network/lan/dhcp/domain_name/enabled]</b>	Enables setting the domain name manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If enabled, <b>network/lan/fixed_ip/domain_name</b> must be set.
IP Address - Manual <b>[network/lan/dhcp/ip_address/enabled]</b>	Enables setting the IP address manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If enabled, <b>network/lan/fixed_ip/ip_address</b> must be set.
Subnet Mask - Manual <b>[network/lan/dhcp/netmask/enabled]</b>	Enables setting the network mask manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If enabled, <b>network/lan/fixed_ip/netmask</b> must be set.
<b>[network/lan/dhcp/gateway/enabled]</b>	Enables setting the default gateway manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If enabled, <b>network/lan/fixed_ip/gateway</b> must be set.
Primary DNS - Manual <b>[network/lan/dhcp/primary_dns/enabled]</b>	Enables setting the primary DNS manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If enabled, <b>network/lan/fixed_ip/primary_dns</b> must be set.
Secondary DNS - Manual <b>network/lan/dhcp/secondary_dns/enabled</b>	Enables setting the secondary DNS manually. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If enabled, <b>network/lan/fixed_ip/secondary_dns</b> must be set.

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCP-Related Parameters</b>	
<b>network/lan/dhcp/ntp/server_list/enabled</b>	Enables prioritization of the NTP server's information received from the DHCP server (Option fields 42 or 4), over the static configuration ( <b>system/ntp/primary_server_address</b> and <b>system/ntp/secondary_server_address</b> ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li></ul>
<b>network/lan/dhcp/ntp/gmt_offset/enabled</b>	Enables prioritization of the NTP GMT offset information received from the DHCP server (Option field 2), over the static configuration ( <b>system/ntp/gmt_offset</b> ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li></ul>

# 15 Configuring LAN and PC Port Settings

Port settings can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.



**Note:** The optional values of the Configuration File parameters are enclosed in square brackets while its corresponding Web values are written outside the square brackets, for example, [1] Enable.

➤ **To configure the phone's port settings using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Network Settings page (**Configuration** tab > **Network Connections** menu > **Network Settings**).

**Figure 15-1: Web Interface - Network Settings - Port Mode**

LAN Port Mode:	Auto Negotiation ▼
PC Port Mode:	Auto Negotiation ▼

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To define the phone's port settings using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 15-1: Port Settings**

Parameter	Description
LAN Port Mode [network/lan/port_mode]	Sets the LAN port mode. Valid values are : [AUTOMATIC] = Auto negotiation. [FULL_10] = 10Mbps + full duplex [FULL_100] = 100Mbps + half duplex [HALF_10] = 10Mbps + full duplex [HALF_100] = 100Mbps + half duplex [FULL _ 1Gbps] = 1 Gbit/s port + full duplex
PC Port Mode [network/pc/port_mode]	Sets the computer port mode. See valid values above.

# 16 Configuring VLAN Settings

You can configure VLAN settings using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure the phone's VLAN settings using the Web interface:**

1. In the Web interface access the Network Settings page (**Configuration** tab > **Network Connections** menu > **Network Settings**).

**Figure 16-1: Web Interface - Network Settings - VLAN Settings**

2. Configure the settings using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure the phone's VLAN settings using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 16-1: VLAN Settings**

Parameter	Description
VLAN Discovery Mode [ <b>network/lan/vlan/mode</b> ]	<p>Determines how VLAN is assigned to your IP phone, i.e., manually or automatically, and if automatically, according to which protocol.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Disable [Disable]</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Manual Configuration of VLAN [Manual]</b> - If selected, the screen extends to also display 'VLAN ID' and 'VLAN Priority' (see these settings below) for static configuration of VLAN ID and priority. See Section 16.1 below for a detailed explanation.</li> <li>▪ <b>Automatic Configuration of VLAN (CDP) [CDP]</b> - VLAN discovery mechanism based on Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP). See Section 16.1 below for a detailed explanation.</li> <li>▪ <b>Automatic Configuration of VLAN (LLDP) [LLDP]</b> - VLAN discovery mechanism based on LLDP. See Section 16.1 below for a detailed explanation.</li> <li>▪ <b>Automatic Configuration of VLAN (CDP+LLDP) [CDP_LLDP]</b> (default) - VLAN discovery mechanism based on LLDP and CDP. LLDP is higher priority. See below for a detailed explanation.</li> </ul>
Period [ <b>network/lan/vlan/period</b> ]	<p>The time period, in seconds, between discovery messages when configured to CDP, LLDP or CDP+LLDP. The default value is 30.</p>

Parameter	Description
VLAN ID [network/lan/vlan/id]	The VLAN ID. The valid range is 0 to 4096. The default is 0.
VLAN Priority [network/lan/vlan/priority]	The priority of traffic pertaining to this VLAN. The valid range is 0 to 7 (where 7 is the highest priority). The default is 0.
PC Port VLAN Activate [network/lan/vlan/pc_port_tagging/enable]	Default = <b>Disable [0]</b> . Change to <b>Enable (1)</b> for the traffic from the PC to the network to be VLAN-tagged.

## 16.1 Configuring Manual or Automatic VLAN Assignment

You can configure the VLAN to be assigned manually or automatically to your IP phone. This section shows when to configure what, and why.

### 16.1.1 Configuring Manual VLAN Assignment to the IP Phone

Configure manual assignment of the VLAN in order to set up two separate VLANs in your enterprise, one for voice (your IP phone) and the other for data (your pc). Security considerations may require this. If you configure manual assignment, the switch in your enterprise will assign the VLAN to your IP phone. See Sections 14.1.1 and 14.1.2 for details.

### 16.1.2 Configuring Automatic VLAN Assignment to the IP Phone

Configure automatic assignment of VLAN if you do not need to separate voice from data, i.e., if there are no security considerations requiring it. In this case, configure either:

- Automatic Configuration of VLAN (CDP) [**CDP**]  
Automatic Configuration of VLAN (LLDP) [**LLDP**]-OR-
- Automatic Configuration of VLAN (CDP+LLDP) [**CDP\_LLDP**]

What you select depends on whether the switch deployed in your enterprise supports Cisco-proprietary Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), or LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) which is a vendor-neutral protocol used by devices in an IEEE 802 LAN to advertise their identity, capabilities, and neighbors. Not all switches support CDP. If you are not sure, select 'Automatic Configuration of VLAN (CDP+LLDP)'. LLDP includes enhanced LLDP for Media Endpoint Devices, i.e., LLDP-MED, to specifically address voice applications.



# **Part V**

## **VoIP Settings**

# 17 Configuring SIP Settings

You can configure the following SIP settings using the Web interface or Configuration File:

- General
- Proxy and Registration
- SIP Timers
- SIP QoS

## 17.1 Configuring General SIP Settings

The phone's General SIP settings can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure general SIP settings using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Signaling Protocols page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**).

**Figure 17-1: Web Interface - Signaling Protocols- SIP General**

▼ SIP General	
SIP Transport Protocol:	UDP ▼
SIP Local Port:	5060
Gateway Name:	<input type="text"/>
PRACK Mode:	Enable ▼
Enable RPORT:	Enable ▼
Include PTIME in SDP:	Disable ▼
Enable Keep Alive using OPTIONS:	Disable ▼
Connect Media on 180 Response:	Disable ▼
Block Caller ID on Outgoing Calls:	Disable ▼
Incoming Anonymous Call Blocking:	Disable ▼

2. Configure the SIP General parameters using [Table 17-1](#) below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **e General SIP parameters using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-1: SIP General Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SIP Transport Protocol [voip/signalling/sip/transport_protocol]	Determines the transport layer for outgoing SIP calls initiated by the phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [UDP] UDP (default)</li> <li>▪ [TCP] TCP</li> <li>▪ [TLS] TLS</li> </ul>
TLS Port [voip/signalling/sip/tls_port]	Defines the local TLS SIP port for SIP messages. The valid range is 1024 to 65535. The default value is 5061.
[voip/signalling/sip/enable_sips]	Relevant for TLS only, if enabled, the request URI prefix will be "sips:" otherwise, the prefix will be "sip:"
[voip/signalling/sip/subs_no_notify_timer]	Indicates the maximum time (in milliseconds) that a subscription waits from receiving 2xx response for a SUBSCRIBE request, until receiving the first NOTIFY request. If the timer expires, the subscription will be terminated.
SIP Local Port [voip/signalling/sip/port]	Defines the local SIP port (UDP or TCP) for SIP messages. The valid range is 1024 to 65535. The default value is 5060.
Gateway Name [voip/signalling/sip/proxy_gateway]	Assigns a name to the phone. The name is used as the host part of the SIP URI in the From header. <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Ensure that the name you choose is the one with which the Proxy is configured to identify the phone.</li> <li>▪ If not specified, the phone's IP address is used (default).</li> </ul>
PRACK Mode [voip/signalling/sip/prack/enabled]	Determines whether the phone sends PRACK (Provisional Acknowledgment) messages upon receipt of 1xx SIP reliable responses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable (default)</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Enable RPORT [voip/signalling/sip/rport/enabled]	Determines whether the phone adds the 'rport' parameter to the relevant SIP message (in the SIP Via header). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Include PTIME in SDP [voip/signalling/sip/sdp_include_ptime]	Determines whether the phone adds the PTIME parameter to the SDP message body. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Enable Keep Alive using OPTIONS [voip/signalling/sip/keepalive_options/enabled]	Determines whether keep-alive is performed using SIP OPTIONS messages sent to the Proxy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Keep Alive Period [voip/signalling/sip/keepalive_options/timeout]	Defines the Proxy keep-alive time interval (in seconds) between Keep-Alive messages. The valid range is 0 to 86400. The default value is 300.
Connect Media on 180 Response [voip/signalling/sip/connect_media_on_180]	Determines whether the media is connected upon receipt of SIP 180, 183, or 200 messages. When the parameter is disabled, media is connected upon receipt of 183 and 200 messages only. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Block Caller ID on Outgoing Calls [voip/signalling/sip/block_callerid_on_outgoing_calls]	Can be configured only if the BroadSoft BroadWorks application server is used. When enabled, the outgoing INVITE message is sent with an anonymous From header and P-Asserted-Identityheader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul> For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FROMheader contains anonymous URI: From: "Anonymous" sip:anonymous@anonymous.invalid</li> <li>▪ P-Asserted-Identityheader: P-Asserted-Identity: "1001" 1115551001@proxy.net</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Incoming Anonymous Call Blocking <b>[voip/signalling/sip/anonymous_calls_blocking]</b>	<p>Can be configured only if the BroadSoft BroadWorks application server is used.</p> <p>When enabled, incoming INVITE messages with anonymous From header are rejected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p>For example:  <i>From:"Anonymous"&lt;sip:anonymous@anonymous.invalid&gt;</i></p> <p>The phone responds with a SIP 403 "Forbidden" response.</p>
<b>[voip/signalling/sip/auth_retries]</b>	<p>Defines the number of times authenticated register messages are re-sent if 401 or 407 SIP responses with a different "nonce" are received.</p> <p>The valid range is 0 to 100. The default value is 4.</p>
<b>[voip/signalling/sip/display_name_in_registration_msg/enabled]</b>	<p>Sets the Display Name in the 'To' and 'From' fields of the SIP REGISTER message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
<b>[voip/signalling/sip/semi_transfer_with_no_cancel/enabled]</b>	<p>Determines whether semi-attendant transfer is performed without sending the SIP CANCEL message to the remote side.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ In this flow ("with_no_cancel"), the Transferor's User Agent continues the transfer as an attended transfer even after the Transferor hangs up. This is the recommended flow defined by <a href="http://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-sipping-cc-transfer-03">http://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-sipping-cc-transfer-03</a>.</li> <li>▪ Existing / current behavior is retained for backward compatibility (disabled by default)</li> </ul>

## 17.2 Configuring Proxy and Registration

This section shows how to configure Proxy and Registration settings using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure Proxy and Registration using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Signaling Protocol page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**).

**Figure 17-2: Web Interface - SIP Proxy and Registrar**

Signaling Protocol	
▼SIP Proxy and Registrar	
Use SIP Proxy:	Enable ▼
Proxy IP Address or Host Name:	10.37.4.204
Proxy Port:	5060
Enable Registrar Keep Alive:	Disable ▼
Maximum Number of Authentication Retries:	4
Use SIP Proxy IP and Port for Registration:	Enable ▼
Use SIP Registrar:	Disable ▼
Registration Expires:	3600 Seconds
Registration Failed Expires:	60 Seconds
Use SIP Outbound Proxy:	Disable ▼
Use Redundant Outbound Proxy:	Disable ▼
Redundant Proxy Mode:	Disable ▼

2. Configure Proxy and Registration parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure Proxy and Registration using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-2: Proxy and Registrar Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Use SIP Proxy [voip/signalling/sip/use_proxy]	Determines whether to use a SIP Proxy server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
[voip/signalling/sip/proxy_address]	The IP address or host name of the SIP proxy server. Default: 0.0.0.0
Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/proxy_port]	The UDP or TCP port of the SIP proxy server. Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.

Parameter	Description
Enable Registrar Keep Alive [voip/signalling/sip/registrar_ka/enabled]	<p>Determines whether to use the registration keep-alive mechanism based on SIP OPTION messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[0] Disable (default)</li> <li>[1] Enable</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If there is no response from the server, the timeout for re-registering is automatically reduced to a user-defined value (<b>voip/signalling/sip/registration_failed_timeout</b>)</li> <li>When the phone re-registers, the keep-alive messages are re-sent periodically.</li> </ul>
Registrar Keep Alive Period [voip/signalling/sip/registrar_ka/timeout]	<p>Defines the registration keep-alive time interval (in seconds) between Keep-Alive messages.</p> <p>Range: 40 to 65536. Default: 60.</p>
Maximum Number of Authentication Retries [voip/signalling/sip/proxy_timeout]	<p>The SIP proxy server registration timeout (in seconds).</p> <p>Range: 0 to 86400. Default: 3600.</p>
Use SIP Proxy IP and Port for Registration [voip/signalling/sip/use_proxy_ip_port_for_registrar]	<p>Determines whether to use the SIP proxy's IP address and port for registration. When enabled, there is no need to configure the address of the registrar separately.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[0] Disable (default)</li> <li>[1] Enable</li> </ul>
Use SIP Registrar [voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/enabled]	<p>Determines whether the phone registers to a separate SIP Registrar server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[0] Disable (default)</li> <li>[1] Enable</li> </ul>
Registrar IP Address or Host Name [voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/addr]	<p>[Only displayed if the 'Use SIP Registrar' parameter is enabled.]</p> <p>The IP address or host name of the Registrar server. Default: 0.0.0.0</p>
Registrar Port [voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/port]	<p>[Only displayed if the 'Use SIP Registrar' parameter is enabled.] The UDP or TCP port of the Registrar server.</p> <p>Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.</p>
Registration Expires [voip/signalling/sip/registration_failed_timeout]	<p>If registration fails, this parameter determines the interval between the register messages periodically sent until successful registration.</p> <p>Range: 1 to 86400. Default: 3600.</p>
Registration Failed Expires [voip/signalling/sip/registration_failed_timeout]	<p>If registration fails, this parameter determines the interval between the register messages periodically sent until successful registration.</p> <p>Range: 1 to 86400. Default: 300.</p>

Parameter	Description
Use SIP Outbound Proxy [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/enabled]	Determines whether an outbound SIP proxy server is used (all SIP messages are sent to this server as the first hop). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Outbound Proxy IP Address or Host Name [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/addr]	[Only displayed if the 'Use SIP Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.] The IP address of the outbound proxy. If this parameter is set, all outgoing messages (including Registration messages) are sent to this Proxy according to the Stack behavior. Default: 0.0.0.0.
Outbound Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/port]	[Only displayed if the 'Use SIP Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.] The port on which the outbound proxy listens. Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.
Use Redundant Outbound Proxy voip/signalling/sip/redundant_outband_proxy/enabled	Enable this parameter if you want to operate with an outbound proxy server that will serve as a backup if the first goes down. <b>[0]</b> = Disabled <b>[1]</b> = Enabled Default: 0
Redundant Outbound Proxy Address [voip/signalling/sip/redundant_outbound_proxy/address]	[Only displayed if the 'Use Redundant Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.] Defines the IP address of the backup outbound proxy server. Format: <b>0.0.0.0</b>
Redundant Outbound Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/redundant_outbound_proxy/port]	[Only displayed if the 'Use Redundant Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.] Defines the port of the backup outbound proxy server. If occupied by other enterprise devices, you can configure another. Default = 5060.
Redundant Outbound Proxy Keep Alive Period [voip/signalling/sip/redundant_outbound_proxy/keepalive_period]	[Only displayed if the 'Use Redundant Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.] Defines how often a keep alive signal is sent by the phone to the redundant outbound proxy. Default: Every 60 seconds.

Parameter	Description
Redundant Outbound Proxy Symmetric Mode [voip/signalling/sip/redundant_outbound_proxy/symmetric_mode]	<p>[Only displayed if the 'Use Redundant Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.]</p> <p><b>[0]</b> = Asymmetric (default) (never switch back to the primary)</p> <p><b>[1]</b> = Symmetric (switch back to the primary when available)</p> <p>If asymmetric mode is configured and the primary outbound server goes down, you'll operate with the redundant outbound proxy without ever reverting to the primary unless the redundant outbound proxy also goes down.</p> <p>If symmetric mode is configured and the primary outbound server goes down, an attempt will be made to revert to the primary outbound server.</p>
Redundant Proxy Mode [voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/mode]	See the next section.

## 17.2.1 Configuring Proxy Redundancy

The Redundant Proxy feature allows the configuration of a backup SIP proxy server to increase QoS stability. Once this feature is enabled, the phone identifies cases where the primary proxy does not respond to SIP signaling messages. In these scenarios, the phone registers to the redundant proxy and the phone seamlessly continues normal functionality, without the user noticing any connectivity failure or malfunction with the primary proxy.

The Redundant Proxy feature can operate in one of the following modes:

- **Asymmetric mode:** The primary proxy is assigned a higher priority for registration than the redundant proxy. Once the phone is registered to the primary proxy, it sends keep-alive messages (using SIP OPTIONS messages) to the primary proxy. If the primary proxy does not respond, the phone registers to the redundant proxy, but continues sending keep-alive messages to the primary proxy. **If the primary proxy responds to these keep-alive messages, the phone re-registers to the primary proxy.**
- **Symmetric mode:** Both proxies are assigned the same priority for registration. Once the phone is registered to a proxy, it sends keep-alive messages to this proxy. The phone switches proxies only once the proxy to which it has registered, does not respond.

For more information see the `[voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/symmetric_mode]` description in the SIP Proxy Server Redundancy Parameters table below.

Proxy Redundancy can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration file.

➤ **To configure Proxy Redundancy using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Signaling Protocol page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**).

**Figure 17-3: Web Interface - Proxy Redundancy**

▼SIP Proxy and Registrar	
Use SIP Proxy:	Disable ▼
Use SIP Registrar:	Disable ▼
Use SIP Outbound Proxy:	Disable ▼
Use Redundant Outbound Proxy:	Disable ▼
Redundant Proxy Mode:	Primary-Fallback ▼
Redundant Proxy Address:	0.0.0.0
Redundant Proxy Port:	5060
Redundant Proxy Keep Alive Period:	60
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Switch back to Primary SIP proxy when available	

2. Configure the Proxy Redundancy parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure Proxy Redundancy using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-3: SIP Proxy Server Redundancy Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/signaling/sip/redundant_proxy/enabled]</b>	Mandatory for the phone to operate in redundancy. Commands the phone to operate with the other <b>voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy</b> parameters.
Redundant Proxy Mode <b>[voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/mode]</b>	Mandatory for the phone to operate in redundancy. Defines the two proxies' mode of operation: Primary-Fallback or Simultaneous. Defines a backup SIP proxy server to increase QoS stability. Enable the parameter if you want to operate with a proxy server that will serve as a backup if the first goes down. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Disable</b> = (Default) Phone doesn't use redundant proxy. If set to <b>Disable</b> in the Web interface, it will set the previously described ini file parameter <b>redundant_proxy/enabled</b> as well.</li> <li>▪ <b>Primary-Fallback</b> = Phone registered to redundant proxy if the primary proxy does not respond to SIP signaling messages.</li> <li>▪ <b>Simultaneous</b> = Applies only in some environments. If selected, dual registration is performed; the phone registers simultaneously to both servers. See Appendix A.3.4.</li> </ul>
Redundant Proxy Address <b>[voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/address]</b>	[Only displayed if the 'Redundant Proxy Mode' parameter is enabled (Primary-Fallback)] Defines the IP address of the backup proxy server. Default: <b>0.0.0.0</b>
Redundant Proxy Keep Alive Period <b>voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/keepalive_period</b>	[Only displayed if the 'Redundant Proxy Mode' parameter is enabled (Primary-Fallback)] Defines how often a keep alive message is sent by the phone to the proxy server. Range: 0 to 300. Default: Every 60 seconds.
Redundant Outbound Proxy Port <b>voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/port</b>	[Only displayed if the 'Redundant Proxy Mode' parameter is enabled (Primary-Fallback)] Defines the UDP or TCP port of the backup redundant proxy server. If occupied by other enterprise devices, you can configure another. Range: 1024 to 65535. Default = 5060.

Parameter	Description
<p>Switch back to Primary SIP proxy when available  <b>[voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/symmetric_mode]</b></p>	<p>[Only displayed if the 'Redundant Proxy Mode' parameter is enabled (Primary-Fallback)]  The phone identifies cases where the primary proxy does not respond to SIP signaling messages. In these scenarios, the phone registers to the redundant proxy and the phone seamlessly continues normal functionality, without the user noticing any connectivity failure or malfunction with the primary proxy.</p> <p><b>[0]</b> = Asymmetric (default). In this mode, the primary proxy is assigned a higher priority for registration than the redundant proxy. Once the phone is registered to the primary proxy, it sends keep-alive messages (using SIP OPTIONS messages) to the primary proxy. If the primary proxy does not respond, the phone registers to the redundant proxy, but continues sending keep-alive messages to the primary proxy. If the primary proxy responds to these keep-alive messages, the phone re-registers to the primary proxy. Therefore, the phone assigns the primary proxy a higher priority for registration. If asymmetric mode is configured and the primary server goes down, an attempt will be made to revert to the primary server.</p> <p><b>[1]</b> = Symmetric. In this mode, both proxies are assigned the same priority for registration. Once the phone is registered to a proxy, it sends keep-alive messages to this proxy. The phone switches proxies only once the proxy to whom it has registered does not respond. Therefore, the phone assigns both proxies the same priority for registration. If symmetric mode is configured and the primary server goes down, you'll operate with the redundant proxy without ever reverting to the primary unless the redundant proxy also goes down.</p> <p>In both modes, the following applies:</p> <p>If the phone is not registered (i.e., if the proxy server – redundant or primary – to which the phone currently tries to register does not respond), the phone attempts to register to an alternative proxy. These attempts continue until the phone successfully registers.</p> <p>If this feature is enabled and the user reboots the phone, the phone registers to the last proxy to which it was trying to register, and not necessarily to the primary proxy.</p>

## 17.2.2 Device Registration Failover/Failback

### 17.2.2.1 Failover

This feature enables a secondary server to take over the functions of the primary server on the enterprise network, if SIP communication between the SIP access device and the primary proxy server is blocked or delayed or the primary server isn't available.

No phone functionality is lost when the secondary server takes over.



**Note:**

- For failover to function, the Proxy DNS server must be configured with a list of the names of the proxies, in order and priority, i.e, SRV record. Before the phone tries to register, it performs an NAPTR / SRV query (see the table below for an explanation of these). The DNS server send a prioritized list. The phone sends a Registration request to the first SIP server; if it isn't responsive in *n* time retries (i.e., 'outgoing\_request\_no\_response\_timeout' parameter), it goes to the second, etc., until it gets a response.
- SIP Proxy/Outbound Proxy must be configured as the host name.

➤ **To configure failover using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-4: Device Registration Failover Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SIP Transport Protocol [voip/signalling/sip/transport_protocol]	Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>UDP (default)</li> <li>TCP</li> <li>TLS encryption</li> </ul> In the SIP protocol, Name Authority Pointers (NAPTRs) are used to map servers and user addresses. Combined with Service Records (SRVs), they enable determining the service types available for a name, the name to use for an SRV lookup, and the port and 'A' DNS records to use to find the IP for the service.
[voip/signalling/sip/outgoing_request_no_response_timeout_ms]	This is the timeout, in milliseconds, that lapses until the phone failovers to the secondary proxy. Default: 32000
Outbound Proxy IP Address or Host Name	Configure this parameter as an SRV host name.
Outbound Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/port]	Configure a value of <b>65535</b> for this parameter. Configure the parameter when you're using an Outbound Proxy. Either configure <i>this</i> parameter or the parameter 'Proxy Port'.

Parameter	Description
Proxy IP Address or Host Name	Configure this parameter as an SRV host name.
Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/proxy_port]	Configure a value of <b>65535</b> for this parameter. Configure the parameter when you're using a regular Proxy server. Either configure <i>this</i> parameter <i>or</i> the parameter 'Outbound Proxy Port'.
Registrar Port [voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/port]	Configure this parameter when you're using a regular Proxy server.

### 17.2.2.2 Failback

➤ To configure failback using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-5: Device Registration Failback Parameter**

Parameter	Description
[voip/signalling/sip/failback_retry_timeout]	<p>[Only applies to BroadSoft]. Applies only if you're operating with the DNS mode of failover, i.e., with a DNS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default) – it'll never try to access back to the first one.</li> <li>▪ <b>[n]</b> Time, in seconds, that must lapse before failback is performed.</li> </ul>

## 17.3 Configuring a Line

This section shows how to configure a line.



**Note:** The Web interface page of the 420HD/405HD phone are the same as AudioCodes 440HD/430HD, except:

- on the 420HD/405 phones, 'Line Mode' is not supported
- on the 420HD/405 phones, 'Label' is supported
- on the 420HD/405 phones, two lines can be configured; on the 430HD/440HD phones, six lines can be configured.

### ➤ To configure a line using the Web interface:

1. Access the Line Settings page (**Configuration > Voice Over IP > Line Settings**):

**Figure 17-4: Web Interface - Line Settings**

2. Configure Line Mode using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

### ➤ To configure line mode using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Figure 17-5: Line Settings**

Parameter	Description
Line Display Name [voip/line/0/description]	Defines the SIP User ID which is sent in "INVITE" packets to the called party in the "From" field, and should appear to the called party as "Caller ID". Default: 400HD
Line Activate [voip/line/0/enabled]	Activates or deactivates the line. [0] = Disabled (this is the default for the second line and higher in the Configuration File) [1] = Enabled (this is the default for first line voip/line/0/ in the Configuration File)
Line User ID [voip/line/0/id]	Defines the SIP User ID provided by the SIP server which the phone attempts to associate itself with during the registration process. This is also the default ID sent in the "INVITE" if the Line Display Name above is left blank. Default: 0

Parameter	Description
Line Authentication User Name [voip/line/0/auth_name]	Defines the SIP username credential used in the registration process when attempting to associate with the above Line ID. Default: 0
Line Authentication Password [voip/line/0/auth_password]	Defines the SIP password associated with the above Line ID identifier during the registration process. Default: 0
Line Label [voip/line/0/extension_display]	Defines the label displayed on the LCD screen.

## 17.4 Configuring Shared Call Appearance

Figure 17-6: Shared Call Appearance

Parameter	Description
[voip/line/0/shared_call_appearance/ call_info_expiration_timeout]	Default: 3600
[voip/line/0/shared_call_appearance/ call_info_subscription_failed_timeou t]	Default: 60
[voip/line/0/shared_call_appearance/ line_seize_expiration_timeout]	Default: 15
[voip/line/0/shared_call_appearance/ speed_dial_delay]	Default: 2
[voip/line/0/shared_call_appearance/ waiting_to_line_seize_tone]	Default: SILENCE

## 17.5 Configuring SIP Timers

SIP Timers can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure SIP timer settings using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Signaling Protocol page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**).

**Figure 17-7: Web Interface - Signaling Protocols - SIP Timers**

SIP Timers	
Retransmission Timer T1:	<input type="text" value="500"/>
Retransmission Timer T2:	<input type="text" value="4000"/>
Retransmission Timer T4:	<input type="text" value="5000"/>
INVITE Timer:	<input type="text" value="32000"/>
Session-Expires:	<input type="text" value="1800"/>
Min-SE:	<input type="text" value="90"/>

2. Configure the SIP Timers parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure SIP timer settings using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-6: SIP Timers Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Retransmission Timer T1 [voip/signalling/sip/sip_t1]	<p>The time interval (in msec) between the first transmission of a SIP message and the first retransmission of the same message (according to RFC 3261).</p> <p>The valid range is 100 to 60000. The default value is 500.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The time interval between subsequent retransmissions of the same SIP message starts with SipT1Rtx and is multiplied by two until SipT2Rtx. For example (assuming that SipT1Rtx = 500 and SipT2Rtx = 4000):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The first retransmission is sent after 500 msec.</li> <li>▪ The second retransmission is sent after 1000 (2*500) msec.</li> <li>▪ The third retransmission is sent after 2000 (2*1000) msec.</li> <li>▪ The fourth retransmission and subsequent retransmissions until SIPMaxRtx are sent after 4000 (2*2000) msec..</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Retransmission Timer T2 [voip/signalling/sip/sip_t2]	<p>The maximum interval (in msec) between retransmissions of SIP messages (according to RFC 3261).</p> <p>The valid range is 4000 to 60000.</p> <p>The default value is 4000.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The time interval between subsequent retransmissions of the same SIP message starts with SipT1Rtx and is multiplied by two until SipT2Rtx.</p>
Retransmission Timer T4 [voip/signalling/sip/sip_t4]	<p>The SIP T4 retransmission timer according to RFC 3261.</p> <p>The valid range is 5000 to 60000.</p> <p>The default value is 5000.</p>
INVITE Timer [voip/signalling/sip/sip_invite_timer]	<p>The SIP INVITE timer according to RFC 3261.</p> <p>The valid range is 0 to 65535. The default value is 32000.</p>
Session-Expires [voip/signalling/sip/session_timer]	<p>The time (in seconds) at which an element considers the call timed out if no successful INVITE transaction occurs beforehand. This value is inserted into every INVITE in the Session-Expires header unless it is configured to 0. If the timer option tag is not part of the supported list, the sessionExpires value is ignored.</p> <p>The valid range is 0 to 65535. The default value is 1800.</p>
Min-SE [voip/signalling/sip/min_session_interval]	<p>The minimum value for the session interval that the application is willing to accept.</p> <p>The valid range is 0 to 65535. The default value is 90.</p>

## 17.6 Configuring SIP QoS

SIP Quality of Service (QoS) can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure SIP QoS using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Signaling Protocol page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**).

**Figure 17-8: Web Interface - Quality of Service**

2. Configure the SIP QoS parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure SIP QoS using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-7: SIP QoS Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Type of Service (ToS) [voip/signalling/sip/tos]	QoS in hexadecimal format. This is a part of the IP header that defines the type of routing service to tag outgoing signalling packets originated from the phone. It informs routers that this packet must receive a specific QoS.  The default value is 0x60.  Values can be set in decimal (e.g. 96) or hexadecimal (e.g. 0x60).

For information on configuring RTP QoS, see Section 20.3 on page 105.

## 17.7 Configuring SIP Reject Code

Reject Code can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure Reject Code using the Web Interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services** > **General Parameters**).

**Figure 17-9: Web Interface - General Parameters - Reject Code**

2. Configure 'Reject Code' using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure Reject Code using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 17-8: Reject Code Parameter**

Parameter	Description
Reject Code [voip/services/reject_code]	Configures the reject code that the phone sends when the <b>Reject</b> softkey is pressed or while DND is activated. Valid values are: [CODE_603] [CODE_486]

# 18 Configuring Dialing

Dialing parameters can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

## 18.1 Configuring General Dialing Parameters

General dialing parameters can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

### ➤ To configure dialing using the Web interface:

1. Access the Dialing page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Dialing**).

**Figure 18-1: Web Interface Dialing**

Dialing Parameters		
Dialing Timeout:	5	Seconds
Phone Number Length:	32	Digits
Enable Dialing Complete Key:	Enable	
Dialing Complete Key:	#	
Enable Replace Number Sign With Escape Char:	Disable	

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

### ➤ To configure dialing using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 18-1: Dialing Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Dialing Timeout [voip/dialing/timeout]	The duration (in seconds) of allowed inactivity between dialled digits. When you work with a proxy, the number you have dialled before the dialing process has timed out is sent to the proxy as the user ID to be called. This is useful for calling a remote party without creating a speed dial entry (assuming the remote party is registered with the proxy). Range is 0 to 10. Default = 5.
Phone Number Length [voip/dialing/phone_number_max_size]	The maximum length of shortcut numbers that you can enter and the maximum number of digits that you can dial. Range is 3 to 32. Default = 32.
Enable Dialing Complete Key [voip/dialing/dial_complete_key/enabled]	Enables the feature for defining a key to indicate that dialing has completed. Pressing the Dialing Complete key (defined below) forces the phone to make a call to the dialled digits even if there is no match in the dial plan or digit map. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable (default)</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This parameter is available only if the parameter 'voip/dialing/dial_complete_key/enabled' is set to 1.
Dialing Complete Key [voip/dialing/dial_complete_key/key]	Defines the Dialing Complete key. The valid value is a single character. The default value is the pound (#) key.

Parameter	Description
No Answer Call Timeout <b>[voip/dialing/unanswered_call_timeout]</b>	Timeout before the phone automatically sends a Cancel message. When the phone makes a call and the other side doesn't answer, the phone sends a Cancel after this timeout. Range: 1 to 300. Default = 60.
<b>[voip/dialing/on_hook_dialing]</b>	<p>Defines the dialing mode when phone is on hook and no audio device is selected (when user enters digits on idle state). Valid values are:</p> <p><b>[Disable]</b> = Ignore digits press. To initiate a call, users will have to select audio device by pressing speaker or headset keys or by picking headset.</p> <p><b>[Open_default_audio_device]</b> = default behavior – start dialing via default audio device (usually speaker) activated.</p> <p><b>[Off_line_dialing]</b> = don't activate the default audio device until pressing 'dial' , DTMF tones will not be heard and dialing related features (such as 'dialing timeout' , 'dial complete key' , and more) will be disabled.</p>
<b>[voip/dialing/allow_calling_self_extension]</b>	<p>If disabled (default), calling the self-number (user ID) will be blocked.</p> <p>If enabled, the phone will send the invite although it is for its own extension. (In some proxies this is how you access voice mail).</p>

## 18.2 Configuring Auto Redial

The administrator is responsible for enabling/disabling the auto-redial feature. If enabled and a called party is unavailable because they're busy (for example), the caller's phone's LCD prompts **Extension Busy. Activate auto redial on busy?**

If the caller then activates auto-redial by pressing **Yes**, the busy extension is automatically redialed every *n* seconds.

The administrator is also responsible for configuring this frequency.

➤ **To configure auto redial using the Web interface:**

1. In the Dialing page, scroll down until the Automatic Redial On Busy section (**VoIP > Dialing > Automatic Redial On Busy**).

**Figure 18-2: Automatic Redial On Busy**

▼Automatic Redial On Busy	
Activate:	Enable ▼
Timeout:	120 Seconds

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure dialing using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 18-2: Automatic Redial On Busy Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Activate [voip/dialing/automatic_redial_on_busy/enabled]	Allows the administrator disable/enable the feature. [0]=Disabled [1]=Enabled Default: <b>0</b>
Timeout [voip/dialing/automatic_redial_on_busy/retry_timer]	Visible only if the feature is enabled. Range: 3-120. Default: <b>30</b> . If the feature is activated and the timer lapses, an outgoing call to the busy destination is established. If the feature is activated, a countdown screen is displayed: <b>Dialing &lt;ext&gt; within &lt;x&gt;s (Line &lt;n&gt;)</b> The screen shows the timer, the remote extension and the line number.

## 18.3 Configuring Dial Tones

Dial Tones settings can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure Dial Tones using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Dialing page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Dialing**).

**Figure 18-3: Dialing Page - Tones**

Dial Tone Timeout:	<input type="text" value="30"/>	Seconds
Reorder Tone Timeout:	<input type="text" value="40"/>	Seconds
No Answer Call Timeout:	<input type="text" value="60"/>	Seconds
Howler Tone Timeout:	<input type="text" value="120"/>	Seconds
Secondary Dial Tone:	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>	
Secondary Dial Tone Key:	<input type="text" value="9"/>	
DTMF Transport Mode:	<input type="text" value="RFC 2833"/>	
Digit Map:	<input type="text"/>	
Dial Plan:	<input type="text"/>	

2. Configure the tones parameters using [Table 18-3](#) below as reference, and then click **Submit**.
3. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**) and scroll down to the General Parameters.

**Figure 18-4: Web Interface - Services Page - Tones**

Stutter Tone Duration:	<input type="text" value="2500"/>	msec
Out of Service Behavior:	<input type="text" value="Reorder Tone"/>	
Automatic Disconnect:	<input type="text" value="Enable"/>	

4. Configure the tones parameters using [Table 18-3](#) below as reference.

➤ **To configure Dial Tones using the Configuration File:**

- Use [Table 18-3](#) below as reference.

**Table 18-3: Dial Tones Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Dial Tone Timeout [voip/dialing/dialtone_timeout]	Defines the maximum duration of the dial tone (in seconds) after which the dial tone stops and a reorder tone is played. Range:1 to 300. Default: 30.
Reorder Tone Timeout [voip/dialing/warning_tone_timeout]	Defines the maximum duration of the reorder tone (in seconds) after which the reorder tone stops and a howler tone is played. Range:1 to 300. Default: 40.
Howler Tone Timeout [voip/dialing/offhook_tone_timeout]	Defines the duration (in seconds) of the howler tone. If the limit is exceeded, the howler tone stops. The howler tone indicates that the phone has been left in an off-hook state. Range:1 to 300. Default: 120.

Parameter	Description
Secondary Dial Tone <b>[voip/dialing/secondary_dial_tone/enabled]</b>	Enables the secondary dial tone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default) - Phone doesn't use secondary dial tone.</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable - Phone plays secondary dial tone if the secondary dial tone key is pressed (first digit).</li> </ul>
Secondary Dial Tone Key <b>[voip/dialing/secondary_dial_tone/key_sequence]</b>	Defines the secondary dial tone is played if this is the first key pressed. Range:0 to 9. Default: 9. <b>Note:</b> This parameter is available only if the parameter 'voip/dialing/secondary_dial_tone/enabled' is set to 1.
Out of Service Behavior <b>[voip/services/out_of_service_behavior]</b>	Determines whether a reorder tone is played instead of a dial tone if you configured a Registrar IP address and the registration failed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[NONE]</b> No Tone</li> <li>▪ <b>[REORDER_TONE]</b> Reorder Tone (default)</li> </ul>
Stutter Tone Duration <b>[voip/services/msg_waiting/stutter_tone_duration]</b>	Defines the duration for which a stutter tone is played when you have unheard messages. Range:1000 to 60000. Default: 2500.
Automatic Disconnect <b>[voip/dialing/automatic_disconnect]</b>	Determines whether the phone automatically goes idle (i.e. on-hook) when the last remaining call is disconnected. This is only relevant when the speaker or headset is used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul>

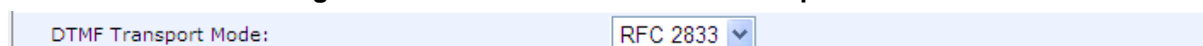
## 18.4 Configuring DTMF

Dual-Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) signaling can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure DTMF using the Web interface:**

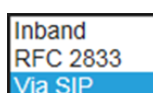
1. Access the Dialing page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Dialing**).

**Figure 18-5: Web Interface - DTMF Transport Mode**



DTMF Transport Mode: RFC 2833 ▼

2. You can choose one of three available DTMF transport methods:



3. The Web interface allows selecting **Inband**, **RFC 2833**, or **Via SIP** as the DTMF transport type.
4. Configure the parameter using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure DTMF using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 18-4: DTMF Transport Mode**

Parameter	Description
DTMF Transport Mode [voip/media/out_of_band_dtmf]	DTMF transport mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[INBAND]</b> Inband</li> <li>▪ <b>[RFC2833]</b> RFC 2833 (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[VIA_SIP]</b> Via SIP</li> </ul>
[voip/media/dtmf_via_sip_force_flag]	Must be set to <b>1</b> to enable <b>Via SIP</b> as DTMF transport type.



**Note:**

- The Web interface parameter 'DTMF Transport Mode' and the cfg file parameter 'voip/media/out\_of\_band\_dtmf' are related; changing one changes the other.
- If the cfg file parameter 'voip/media/dtmf\_via\_sip\_force\_flag' is enabled, a SIP message is sent in addition to the RTP message. If it is disabled, only one message is sent, according to the selected DTMF transport type.

## 18.5 Configuring Digit Maps and Dial Plans

Digit maps and Dial plans can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure digit map and dial plan using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Dialing page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Dialing**).

**Figure 18-6: Web Interface - Digit Map and Dial Plan**

Digit Map:	<input type="text"/>
Dial Plan:	<input type="text"/>

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure digit map and dial plan using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.



**Note:** Invalid Tokens will be ignored by the application.

**Table 18-5: Digit Map and Dial Plan Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Digit Map [voip/signalling/sip/digit_map]	<p>Enables the administrator to predefine possible formats (or patterns) for the dialed number. A match to one of the defined patterns terminates the dialed number.</p> <p>The valid value can be up to 256 characters.</p> <p>There are two main formats for the digit map configuration. The formats are distinguished by the separator ';' or ' '.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Using ' ' separator:</b> The following constructs can be used in each numbering scheme: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ <b>Digit:</b> A digit from <b>0</b> to <b>9</b>.</li> <li>✓ <b>DTMF:</b> A digit, or one of the symbols <b>A</b>, <b>B</b>, <b>C</b>, <b>D</b>, <b>#</b>, or <b>*</b>. Extensions may be defined.</li> <li>✓ <b>Wildcard:</b> The symbol <b>x</b> which matches any digit (<b>0</b> to <b>9</b>).</li> <li>✓ <b>* Range:</b> One or more DTMF symbols enclosed between square brackets (<b>[</b> and <b>]</b>).</li> <li>✓ <b>Sub range:</b> Two digits separated by hyphen (-) which matches any digit between and including the two. The subrange construct can only be used inside a range construct, i.e., between <b>[</b> and <b>]</b>.</li> <li>✓ <b>Position:</b> A period (.) which matches an arbitrary number, including zero, of occurrences of the preceding construct.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>For example:</b>  [2-9]11 0 100 101 011xxx. 9011xxx. 1[2-9]xxxxxxxxx 91[2-9]xxxxxxxxx 9[2-9]xxxxxx *xx [8]xxxx [2-7]xxx  This example includes the following rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ <b>[2-9]11:</b> 911 rule: 211, 311, 411, 511, 611, 711, 811, 911 are dialed immediately</li> <li>✓ <b>0:</b> Local operator rule: After dialing <b>0</b> the phone waits</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	<p>T seconds and then completes the call automatically</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ <b>100:</b> Auto-attendant default extension</li> <li>✓ <b>101:</b> Voicemail default extension</li> <li>✓ <b>011xxx.:</b> International rule without prefix</li> <li>✓ <b>9011xxx.:</b> International rule with prefix</li> <li>✓ <b>1[2-9]xxxxxxxx:</b> LD rule without prefix</li> <li>✓ <b>91[2-9]xxxxxxxx:</b> LD rule with prefix</li> <li>✓ <b>9[2-9]xxxxxx:</b> Local call with prefix</li> <li>✓ <b>*xx:</b> 2-digit star codes</li> <li>✓ <b>[1-7]xx:</b> A regular 3 digit extension that does not start with 9 or 8 is dialed immediately</li> <li>✓ <b>[2-7]xx:</b> A regular 3 digit extension that does not start with 9 or 8 or 1 is dialed immediately</li> <li>✓ <b>[2-7]xxx:</b> A regular 4 digit extension that does not start with 9 or 8 or 1 is dialed immediately</li> <li>✓ <b>[8]xxx:</b> A 3 digit extension prefixed with an 8 (routes calls directly to voicemail of extension xxx)</li> <li>✓ <b>[8]xxxx:</b> A 4 digit extension prefixed with an 8 (routes calls directly to voicemail of extension xxxx)</li> <li>✓ <b>T:</b> Refers to the <b>Dialing Timeout</b>.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Using ';' separator:</b> An 'x' in the pattern indicates any digit. ';' separates between patterns. For example: '10x;05xxxxxxxx;4xxx'. In this example, three patterns are defined. A number that starts with 10 is terminated after the third digit, and so on. If the user dials a number that does not match any pattern, the number is terminated using the timeout or when the user presses the pound ('#') key.</li> </ul>
<b>Dial Plan</b> <b>voip/signalling/sip/number_rules</b>	<p>This parameter works in conjunction with the parameter <b>voip/signalling/sip/digit_map</b> and enables translation of specific patterns to specific SIP destination addresses. An 'x' represents any dialed digit. Each backslash at the right side of the '=' represents one of the dialed digits. Rules are separated by the character ';'. The valid value can be up to 256 characters. For example: '4xxx=Line_\\@10.1.2.3' This rule issues a call to 10.1.2.3 with the SIP ID of Line_ followed by the last three digits of the dialed number.</p>

## 18.6 Configuring Headset LED to Stay On

IT administrators can configure the headset LED to stay on when the phone is on standby *and* when it is in conversation mode.



**Note:** Headset must be configured as the default audio device for the feature to function (see Section 18.7).

➤ **To configure the headset LED to stay on:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 18-6: Headset LED Parameter**

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/highlight_audio_device]</b>	<p>Allows the headset LED to stay on when the phone is on standby <i>and</i> when it is in conversation mode.</p> <p>Functions only when headset is configured as the default audio device.</p> <p>Configure either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[NONE]</b> (Default) Headset LED illuminates only when the phone is in conversation mode.</li> <li>▪ <b>[HEADSET]</b> = Headset LED illuminates when the phone is on standby <i>and</i> when it is in conversation mode</li> </ul>

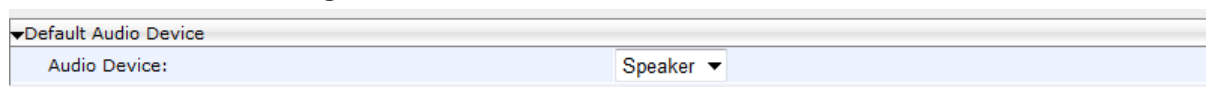
## 18.7 Configuring Default Audio Device

The default audio device (speaker or headset) can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure default audio device using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Dialing page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Dialing**) and scroll down to Default Audio Device.

**Figure 18-7: Web Interface - Default Audio Device**



▼Default Audio Device

Audio Device: Speaker ▼

2. Configure the parameter using the table below as reference and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure default Audio Device using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 18-7: Audio Device Parameter**

Parameter	Description
Audio Device [voip/answer_device]	<p>Sets the default audio device to answer or initiate a new call when no explicit audio device is set.</p> <p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ When pressing the <b>Answer</b> softkey.</li> <li>▪ When initiating a call by speed dial key, call history or phone directory.</li> <li>▪ Answering talk event or auto-answer.</li> <li>▪ When starting to dial in 'on hook' mode.</li> </ul> <p>Valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [SPEAKER]</li> <li>▪ [HEADSET]</li> </ul>

# 19 Configuring Ring Tones

This section shows how to configure and upload ring tones to the phone.

## 19.1 Configuring Distinctive Ring Tones

You can configure a phone to ring in a distinct tone per caller, thus facilitating caller recognition and saving others from unnecessary disruptions to their activities if the phone is shared.

➤ **To configure a distinctive ring tone using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Tones page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Tones**) and scroll down until 'Distinctive Ringing Setting'.

**Figure 19-1: Web Interface – Distinctive Ringing**

Distinctive Ringing Setting				
ID	Ringing Tone Types			Ringing Tone Name
1				Ring01 ▼
2				Ring02 ▼
3				Ring03 ▼
4				Ring04 ▼
5				Ring05 ▼

2. Configure using the table below as a reference.

➤ **To configure a distinctive ring using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as a reference.

**Table 19-1: Distinctive Ringing Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/distinctive_ringing/0-4/ringtone]</b>	A name to assign to a distinctive ring tone: Ring01, Ring02, Ring03 and Ring04. If you do not enter a name, the phone assigns the tone's file name (without the .wav file extension) as the name of the tone
<b>[voip/distinctive_ringing/0-4/type]</b>	The string of the 'Alert-Info' header in the INVITE message, configured in the SIP proxy or application server. Used to distinguish between different calls.

## 19.2 Configuring CPT Regional Settings

It's important to match your phone's Call Progress Tones (CPT) to the country in which your phone is located. This section shows how to configure it.

➤ **To configure your region using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Tones page (Configuration tab > Personal Settings > Tones).

**Figure 19-2: Web Interface - Tones - Regional Settings**

Regional Settings

Current Location: USA

**Attention**

- Changing the regional settings parameters requires a reboot

Submit

2. From the 'Current Location' drop-down list, select the country in which your phone is located. Use the table below as reference.
3. Click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure regional location using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 19-2: Regional Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Current Location [voip/regional_settings/selected_country]	<p>Defines the country in which your phone is located. The behavior and parameters of analog telephones lines vary between countries. CPTs are country-specific. The phone automatically selects the correct regional settings according to this parameter. Supported countries are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[Israel]</b> Israel</li> <li>▪ <b>[China]</b> China</li> <li>▪ <b>[France]</b> France</li> <li>▪ <b>[Germany]</b> Germany</li> <li>▪ <b>[Netherlands]</b> Netherlands</li> <li>▪ <b>[UK]</b> UK</li> <li>▪ <b>[Brazil]</b> Brazil</li> <li>▪ <b>[Italy]</b> Italy</li> <li>▪ <b>[Argentina]</b> Argentina</li> <li>▪ <b>[Portugal]</b> Portugal</li> <li>▪ <b>[Russia]</b> Russia</li> <li>▪ <b>[Australia]</b> Australia</li> <li>▪ <b>[USA]</b> USA (Default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[India]</b> India</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
[voip/regional_settings/use_config_file_values]	Enables the user-defined CPT. When this parameter is enabled, the 'selected_country' parameter is not relevant and the CPT values below can be determined by the user. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> - Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> - Enable</li> </ul>
<b>Call Progress Tones (CPT)</b> <b>Note:</b> Up to 10 CPTs can be configured ( <b>voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/0...9</b> ).	
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/enabled]	Enables the specific CPT. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> - Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> - Enable</li> </ul>
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/name]	Defines the name of the CPT.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/cadence]	Defines the cadence type of the tone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> - Continuous signal</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> - Cadence signal</li> <li>▪ <b>[2]</b> - Burst signal</li> </ul>
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/frequency_a]	Defines the low frequency (in Hz) of the tone. Range:300 - 1980 Hz, in steps of 1 Hz. Unused frequencies must be set to zero.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/frequency_b]	Defines the high frequency (in Hz) of the tone. Range:300 - 3000 Hz, in steps of 1 Hz. Unused frequencies must be set to zero.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/frequency_a_level]	Output level of the low frequency tone (in -dBm) in Call Progress generation. Range: 0 - 63, where 63 is mute.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/frequency_b_level]	Output level of the low frequency tone (in -dBm) in Call Progress generation. Range:0 - 63, where 63 is mute.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/2/name]	Default: <b>busy_tone</b> The calling party hears a busy tone if the called party's line is busy. The busy tone complies with international telcom standards in traditional non-VOIP telephony systems.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/tone_on_0]	tone_on_0 to tone_on_3. If the signal is Cadence or Burst, then this value represents the on duration. If a Continuous tone, then this value represents the minimum detection time. In units of 10 msec. Range:0 - 10000.
[voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/tone_off_0]	tone_off_0 to tone_on_3. If the signal is Cadence, then this value represents the off duration, in units of 10 msec. If not used, then set it to zero. If the signal is Burst, only tone_off_0 is relevant. It represents the off time that is required from the end of the signal to the detection time. Range:0 - 10000.

## 19.3 Uploading Ring Tones

New Ring Tones can be uploaded using the Web interface or Configuration File.



**Note:**

- The ring tone file must be in WAV file format (A/Mu-Law, 8-kHz audio sample rate and 8-bit audio sample size or PCM 16-kHz audio sample rate and 16-bit audio sample size, Intel PCM encoding).
- For the phone to use an uploaded ring tone, select it in the phone's LCD (see the phone's *User's Manual*).

➤ **To upload a ring tone using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Tones page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Tones**).

**Figure 19-3: Web Interface - Upload Ringing Tone**

Upload Ringing Tone (Available space for Additional Ringing Tone WAV Files: 1300KB)		
Ringing Tone Name: <input type="text"/>		
File Location:	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
		<input type="button" value="Submit"/>
ID	Ringing Tone Name	Delete
		<input type="button" value="Submit"/>
Distinctive Ringing Setting		
ID	Ringing Tone Types	Ringing Tone Name
1	<input type="text"/>	Ring01 ▼
2	<input type="text"/>	Ring02 ▼
3	<input type="text"/>	Ring03 ▼
4	<input type="text"/>	Ring04 ▼
5	<input type="text"/>	Ring05 ▼

2. In the 'Ringing Tone Name' field, enter the name of the ring tone file to upload. If you do not enter a name, the phone assigns the tone's file name (without the .wav file extension) as the name of the tone.
  3. Click the **Browse** button, navigate to the folder in which the ring tone file is located, select the file, and then click **Open**; the file name and path is displayed in the 'File Location' field.
  4. Click **Submit**; the file is loaded to the phone and displayed in the Ring Tone Name list.
- **To delete Ring Tones using the Web interface:**
- Select the 'Delete' check boxes corresponding to the ring tone that you want to delete, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To upload Ring Tones using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 19-3: Ring Tone Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Ringing Tone Name File Location <b>[provisioning/ring_tone_uri]</b>	<p>The URI for retrieving the ring tones file. The ring tones can be compressed to zip or tgz files and provided to the phone during provisioning.</p> <p>For example:<b>provisioning/ring_tone_uri=tones.tgz</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The ringtone file is downloaded only after boot up, and not periodically.</li> <li>▪ If the tones file is new, the phone updates the information, but does not reboot.</li> <li>▪ For the feature to function, the file must first be compressed to zip / tgz format. The phone won't accept a simple .wav file format.</li> </ul>
<b>[personal_settings/lines/0/ring_tone]</b> - <b>[personal_settings/lines/3/ring_tone]</b>	<p>Lets administrators set a ring tone for each line extension (up to four line extensions).</p> <p>Administrators can choose any one of the eleven ring tones available: <b>Ring01 - Ring11</b></p>

## 20 Configuring Media Settings

This section shows how to configure media settings.

### 20.1 Configuring Media Streaming

The Configuring Media Streaming feature can be configured using the Configuration File. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

**Table 20-1: Media Streaming Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/media/rtp_mute_on_hold]</b>	Mute sending RTP packets to remote in HOLD state. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> - Disabled. RTP packets are sent to remote end when in HOLD state.</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> - Enabled (default). RTP packets are not sent to remote end when in HOLD state.</li> </ul>
<b>[voip/media/allow_multiple_rtp]</b>	Defines whether to allow multiple RTP streams from different remote ends to be played toward the phone in a single call. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
<b>[voip/media/ignore_rfc_2833_packets]</b>	Defines whether to ignore playing DTMF when RFC2833 arrives from the network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul>
<b>[voip/media/broken_connection_detection]</b>	If enabled an active call will be automatically disconnected if no RTP packet is received within pre-defined time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
<b>[voip/media/broken_connection_timeout]</b>	If no RTP packet arrives for an active call within this timeout (in seconds), the connection will be considered broken and the call will be disconnected. Default: 10.

## 20.2 Configuring RTP Port Range and Payload Type

RTP Port Range and Payload Type can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure RTP Port Range and Payload Type using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Media Streaming page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Media Streaming**).

**Figure 20-1: Web Interface - Media Streaming**

Media Streaming Parameters	
RTP Port Range - Contiguous Series of 4 Ports Starting From:	<input type="text" value="4000"/>
DTMF Relay RFC 2833 Payload Type:	<input type="text" value="101"/>

2. Configure 'RTP Port Range' and 'Payload Type' parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure RTP Port Range and Payload Type using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 20-2: RTP Port Range and Payload Type Parameters**

Parameter	Description
DTMF Relay RFC 2833 Payload Type [voip/media/dtmf_payload]	Defines the RTP payload type used for RFC 2833 DTMF relay packets. Range: 96 - 127. Default: 101.
RTP Port Range [voip/media/media_port]	Defines the base port for the range of Real Time Protocol (RTP) voice transport ports which the enterprise IT administrator must open on the network's firewall. Default: 4000. Valid possible ports (if the default is selected as base port): 4000-4023. If, for example, 5000 is selected as the base port, the valid possible ports will be 5000-5023.

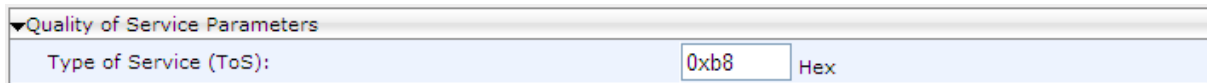
## 20.3 Configuring RTP QoS

RTP QoS can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure RTP QoS using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Media Streaming page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Media Streaming**).

**Figure 20-2: Web Interface - Quality of Service**



▼Quality of Service Parameters

Type of Service (ToS):  ☒ Hex

2. Configure the QoS parameter using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure RTP QoS using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 20-3: RTP QoS Parameter**

Parameter	Description
Type of Service (ToS) <b>[voip/media/media_tos]</b>	QoS in hexadecimal format. This is a part of the IP header that defines the type of routing service to tag outgoing voice packets originated from the phone. It informs routers that this packet must receive a specific QoS. The default value is <b>0xb8</b> . Values can be set in decimal (e.g., 184) or hexadecimal (e.g., 0xb8). Default: 184.

## 20.4 Configuring Codecs

Codecs can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To define the Codecs using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Media Streaming page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Media Streaming**).

**Figure 20-3: Web Interface - Media Streaming - Codecs**

▼Codecs		
Codec Priority	Codec Type	Packetization Time (milliseconds)
1st Codec	G.722/16000 ▼	20 ▼
2nd Codec	G.711, 64 Kbps, u-Law ▼	20 ▼
3rd Codec	G.711, 64 Kbps, A-Law ▼	20 ▼
4th Codec	G.729, 8 Kbps ▼	20 ▼
5th Codec	G.722/16000 ▼	20 ▼

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To define the Codecs using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 20-4: Codec Parameters**

Parameter	Description
[voip/codec/codec_info/%d/enabled]	<p>Determines the codecs that you want to implement and their priority. Up to five codecs can be configured, where the first codec (i.e., <b>voip/codec/0/...</b>) has the highest priority. To make a call, at least one codec must be configured. In addition, for best performance it is recommended to select as many codecs as possible.</p> <p>When you start a call to a remote party, your available codecs are compared with the remote party's to determine the codec to use. If there is no codec that both parties have made available, the call attempt fails. Note that if more than one codec is common to both parties, you cannot force which of the common codecs are used by the remote party's client. To force the use of a specific codec, configure the list with only that specific codec.</p> <p>The %d variable stands for the priority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> - Disabled</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> (default) - Enabled</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Codec Type [voip/codec/codec_info /%d/name]	<p>Name of the codec. The variable %d depicts the index number of the codec entry and its priority, where the first codec (i.e. <b>voip/codec/codec_info/0/name=...</b>) has the highest priority. The valid codec parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[G722]</b> G.722 (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[PCMA]</b> G.711 A-Law</li> <li>▪ <b>[PCMU]</b> G.711 Mu-Law</li> <li>▪ <b>[G729]</b> G.729</li> <li>▪ <b>OPUS</b></li> </ul> <p>For example, <b>voip/codec/codec_info/0/name=G722</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If OPUS is selected from the list of codecs on a phone that doesn't support the OPUS codec, a warning pops up: 'The hardware doesn't support the OPUS codec' (see the figure below).</p>
Packetization Time [voip/codec/codec_info /%d/ptime]	<p>Packetization time - length of the digital voice segment that each packet holds.</p> <p>The default is 20 millisecond packets</p>
[voip/codec/g722_bitrate]	<p>G.722 bit rate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[G722_64K]</b> (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[G722_56K]</b></li> <li>▪ <b>[G722_48K]</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Currently, only 64bps is supported.</p>
[system/activation_keys/amr_coder]	<p>Activation key (string) required to unlock AMR coder (relevant for supporting firmware only).</p>

Figure 20-4: Web Interface - Media Streaming - Codecs

Media Streaming

Media Streaming Parameters

RTP Port Range - Contiguous Series of 4 Ports Starting From: 4000  
DTMF Relay RFC 2833 Payload Type: 101

Quality of Service Parameters

Type of Service (ToS): 0xb8 Hex

Warning! This hardware doesn't support the OPUS codec.

Codecs

Codec Priority	Codec Type	Packetization Time (milliseconds)
1st Codec	G.722/16000	20
2nd Codec	G.711, 64 Kbps, u-Law	20
3rd Codec	G.711, 64 Kbps, A-Law	20
4th Codec	OPUS/48000	20
5th Codec	G.729, 8 Kbps	20

## 21 Configuring Voice Settings

This section shows how to configure voice settings.

### 21.1 Configuring Gain Control

See Section 24.1 for detailed information.

### 21.2 Configuring Jitter Buffer

Jitter Buffer can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To define Jitter Buffer using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Voice page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Voice**) and then scroll down to Jitter Buffer.

**Figure 21-1: Web Interface - Voice – Jitter Buffer**

Jitter Buffer	
Minimum Delay (10 to 250 milliseconds):	<input type="text" value="10"/> msec
Optimization Factor (1 to 13):	<input type="text" value="10"/>

2. Configure the Jitter Buffer parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To define Jitter Buffer using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 21-1: Jitter Buffer Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Minimum Delay [voip/audio/jitter_buffer/min_delay]	The initial and minimal delay of the adaptive jitter buffer mechanism, which compensates for network problems. The value should be set according to the expected average jitter in the network (in milliseconds). Range:10 to 150. Default: 10.
Optimization Factor [voip/audio/jitter_buffer/optimization_factor]	The adaptation rate of the jitter buffer mechanism. Higher values cause the jitter buffer to respond faster to increased network jitter. Range: 0 to 13. Default: 10.

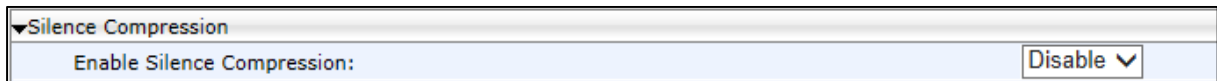
## 21.3 Configuring Silence Compression

The Silence Compression feature can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure Silence Compression using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Voice page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Voice**) and then scroll down to Silence Compression.

**Figure 21-2: Web Interface - Voice - Silence Compression**



▼Silence Compression

Enable Silence Compression: ☒ Disable ▼

2. Configure the parameter using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure Silence Compression using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 21-2: Silence Compression Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Enable Silence Compression <b>[voip/audio/silence_compression/enabled]</b>	Enables silence compression for reducing network bandwidth consumption. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>

## 21.4 Configuring Noise Reduction

The Noise Reduction feature can be configured using the Web interface.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values without consulting Genesys.

➤ **To configure Noise Reduction using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Voice page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Voice**) and then scroll down to Noise Reduction.

**Figure 21-3: Web Interface - Voice - Noise Reduction**

▼Noise Reduction	
Enable Noise Reduction:	Enable ▼
Enable Noise Reduction Suppression:	Enable ▼
Enable Noise Reduction Post Gain:	Disable ▼
Stationary Level:(0-3):	2 ▼
Maximal Attenuation:(0-15):	2

2. Configure the parameters referring to the table below, and then click **Submit**.

**Table 21-3: Noise Reduction Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Enable Noise Reduction	Efficiently suppresses stationary background noise (e.g. office noise) and enhances speech by improving SNR (Signal to Noise Ratio) and emphasizing the important features of the desired speech signal. On the phones, an additive noise is captured due to environmental settings, such as office noise, air conditioning, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Disable</li> <li>▪ Enable (default)</li> </ul>
Enable Noise Reduction Suppression	Enables NRS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Disable</li> <li>▪ Enable (default)</li> </ul>
Enable Noise Reduction Post Gain	Enables the noise reduction post gain. The post gain is additional attenuation of the signal which is performed after the noise reduction operation. It is needed if the noise is highly non-stationary or of low SNR. Note that the post gain attenuates also the speech signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ Enable</li> </ul>
Stationary Level:(0-3)	Configures the noise reduction sensitivity to stationary noise. <b>0</b> = sensitive to stationary noise only. <b>3</b> = sensitive to highly non-stationary noise. Default: <b>2</b>

Parameter	Description
Maximal Attenuation:(0-15)	Defines the maximal noise attenuation during noise-only periods. Default: <b>2</b> .

## 21.5 Configuring Echo Cancellation

**Note:**

- It is strongly advisable to leave the echo cancellation parameters at their defaults and *not* to configure different values.
- Contact your Genesys representative if you encounter an echo cancellation related issue.

You can view the following echo cancellation related parameters in the Configuration File (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** > **Configuration File**).

- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/enabled
- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/extended\_nlp/enabled
- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/handset/HPF\_mode
- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/handsfree/HPF\_mode
- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/headset/HPF\_mode
- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/nlp/max\_delay
- voip/audio/echo\_cancellation/nlp/mode

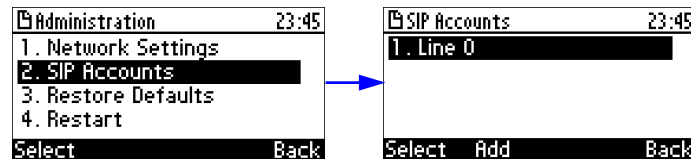
## 22 Configuring Extension Lines

### 22.1 Using the Phone LCD

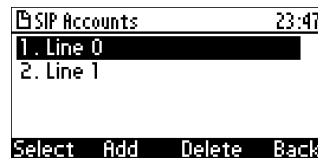
Before you can make a call, you must configure an extension line (SIP account). This section shows how to configure an extension line using the phone's LCD.

➤ **To configure an extension line using the phone's LCD:**

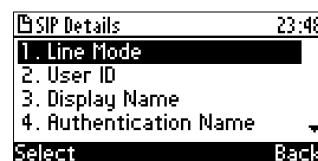
1. Access the SIP Accounts screen (**MENU** key > **Administration** menu > **SIP Accounts**).



2. To add a new line extension (SIP account), press the **Add** softkey (or skip to Step 3 to define an existing line extension (SIP account)).



3. Navigate to the added line and then press the **Select** softkey; the SIP Details screen appears.



4. Choose the required SIP parameter, and then press the **Select** softkey to define it:
  - User ID
  - Display Name
  - Authentication Name
  - Authentication Password
  - SIP Proxy Address
5. After each parameter setting, press the **Save** softkey to save the setting.
6. After completing configuring SIP account settings, press the **Back** softkey until you're prompted that the phone is rebooting. The LCD indicates a warning message: 'Phone is rebooting to apply new settings'.

Phone is rebooting  
to apply new settings...

## 22.2 Using the Web Interface and Configuration File

This section shows how to configure an extension line (SIP account) using the Web interface and Configuration File.

➤ **To configure an extension line (SIP account) using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Line Settings page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Line Settings**).

**Figure 22-1: Web Interface - Line Settings**

▼Line Settings	
Line Number:	1 ▼
Line 1 Activate:	Enable ▼
Line 1 Display Name:	440HD
Line 1 User ID:	4263
Line 1 Authentication User Name:	4263
Line 1 Authentication Password:	••••••••
Line 1 Label:	
Line 1 Mode:	Private ▼

2. Configure the Line Settings using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure an extension line (SIP account) using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 22-1: Line Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>Note:</b> The value %d refers to the line number.	
Line Activate [voip/line/%d/enabled]	<p>Enables the line.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p>The default for Line-0 is 1 (enabled); for the other lines it is 0 (disabled).</p>
Line User ID [voip/line/%d/id]	<p>Lines VoIP user's ID for identification to initiate and accept calls.</p> <p>The user's ID can be up to 30 characters.</p>
Line Display Name [voip/line/%d/description]	<p>Arbitrary name to intuitively identify the line and that is displayed to remote parties as your caller ID.</p>
Line Authentication User Name [voip/line/%d/auth_name]	<p>User name provided to you from the VoIP service provider. This is used when sending a response to Unauthorized or Proxy Authentication Requested (401/407).</p> <p>The authentication name can be up to 35 characters.</p>

Parameter	Description
Line Authentication Password <b>[voip/line/%d/auth_password]</b>	Password provided to you from the VoIP Service Provider. This is used when sending a response to Unauthorized or Proxy Authentication Requested (401/407). The authentication password can be up to 35 characters.
Line Label <b>[voip/line/%d/extension_display]</b>	[Only applies to the 420HD and 405 phones] Set the string that will be displayed in the phone LCD for local extension. If not set, the local extension displayed will be the user ID (self-number).



**Note:** You can activate DnD per phone line (see Section [23.8](#) on page [122](#)).

## 23 Configuring Supplementary Services

You can configure various supplementary services supported by your phone such as Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Three-way Conferencing, and Message Waiting Indication (MWI).

### 23.1 Selecting the Application Server

By default, the phone is set for a generic application server. However, you can select a specific third-party application server as described below (see also Appendix A).



**Note:** Configuration of specific supplementary services depends on the third-party application server used in your organization.

➤ To select the application server using the Web interface:

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**).

Figure 23-1: Web Interface - Services

2. Select the application server and then click **Submit**. Use the table below as reference.

➤ To select the application server using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

Table 23-1: General Supplementary Services Parameters

Parameter	Description
Type [voip/services/application_server_type]	<p>Defines the type of the application server to which the device is registered.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[Generic]</b> Generic (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[Asterisk]</b> Asterisk</li> <li>▪ <b>[BSFT]</b> BroadSoft</li> <li>▪ <b>[Coral]</b> Coral</li> <li>▪ <b>[Metaswitch]</b> Metaswitch</li> <li>▪ <b>[FreeSWITCH]</b> FreeSWITCH</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Parameters unique to the selected application server become applicable in addition to this page's parameters.</p>
Presence [system/current_user_presence_status/enabled]	<p>Only displayed if the application server selected [FreeSWITCH] supports it. Enables the presence feature. The <b>DND</b> softkey on the phone is replaced by <b>Status</b>; the phone shows and publishes the presence status.</p>

Parameter	Description
Feature Key Synchronization	Only displayed if <b>BSFT</b> is selected (see Appendix A.1.4).

## 23.2 Configuring Call Waiting

Call Waiting can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure call waiting using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**).

**Figure 23-2: Web Interface - Services - Call Waiting**

▼Call Waiting	
Activate:	Enable ▼
Call Waiting SIP Reply:	Queued ▼
Generate Tone:	Enable ▼

2. Configure the Call Waiting parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure call waiting using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-2: Call Waiting Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Activate [voip/services/call_waiting/enabled]	Enables the Call Waiting feature. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul>
Call Waiting SIP Reply [voip/services/call_waiting/sip_reply]	Determines the SIP response that is sent when another call arrives while a call is in progress: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[RINGING]Ringing</b> - 180 Ringing</li> <li>▪ <b>[QUEUED]Queued</b> (default) - 182 Queued</li> </ul>
Generate Tone [/voip/services/call_waiting/generate_tone/enabled]	Determines whether the phone plays a call waiting tone: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> The phone doesn't play a call waiting tone.</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> The phone plays a call waiting tone (default).</li> </ul>

## 23.3 Configuring Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding can be configured using the Web interface, Configuration File, or phone LCD. In a BroadSoft environment, Call Forwarding can be configured in the BroadSoft BroadWorks application server (see under Appendix A for detailed information).

➤ **To configure call forwarding using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**).

**Figure 23-3: Web Interface - Services - Call Forward**

▼ Call Forward	
Enable:	Enable ▼
Activate:	Enable ▼
Call Forward Type:	No Reply ▼
Forward on No Reply Timeout:	6 Seconds
Forward Destination:	

2. Configure the Call Forwarding parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure call forwarding using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-3: Call Forward Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Enable [voip/line/%d/call_forward/enabled]	Enables the Call Forward feature. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default)</li> </ul>
Activate [voip/line/%d/call_forward/active]	Activates call forwarding, if it was enabled with the parameter above. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> (default) - Disable</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Call Forwarding is typically activated in the phone's LCD screen (see the <i>User's Manual</i>).</p>
Call Forward Type [voip/line/%d/call_forward/type]	Determines the condition on which incoming calls are forwarded to another destination: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[Unconditional]</b> Unconditional - incoming calls are forwarded independently of the status of the line.</li> <li>▪ <b>[Busy]</b> Busy- incoming calls are forwarded only if the phone is busy.</li> <li>▪ <b>[No_Reply]</b> No Reply (default) - incoming calls are forwarded only if the phone does not answer before a user-defined timeout.</li> </ul>
Forward on No Reply Timeout [voip/line/%d/call_forward/timeout]	If calls are forwarded when the condition is No-Reply, then this parameter defines the time (in seconds) after which incoming calls are forwarded when this is no reply. Range:0 - 7200. Default: 6.
Forward Destination [voip/line/%d/call_forward/destination]	The destination to which the call is directed when call forward is activated.

➤ **To configure call forwarding using the phone's LCD:**

- See the *User's Manual* for detailed information.

## 23.4 Configuring a Conference

Three-way conferencing can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure three-way conferencing using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**).

**Figure 23-4: Web Interface - Services - Conference**

2. Configure the conferencing parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure three-way conferencing using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-4: Conference Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Mode [voip/services/conference/mode]	Sets the conference mode (when establishing 3-Way Conference). [LOCAL] = phone will establish the conference by itself. [REMOTE] = phone will use remote media server to establish the conference.
Remote Conference Media Server [voip/services/conference/conf_ms_addr]	Relevant only if 'Mode'(above) is <b>REMOTE</b> . Defines the media server for establishing remote conference.

For more information on this new feature, refer to RFC 4579, Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) - Call Control - Conferencing for User Agents.

## 23.5 Allowing the Initiator to Drop out of a Conference

The phone can be configured to allow the initiator of a 3-way conference to drop out the conference when they on-hook the phone.

➤ **To configure the capability using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-5: Allowing a Conference Initiator to Drop Out when On-Hooking**

Parameter	Description
[voip/drop_from_3wc_when_on_hook]	Allows the initiator of a 3-way conference to drop out of the conference when they on-hook the phone. [0] = The initiator won't drop out of the conference when they on-hook the phone. [1] = The initiator will drop out of the conference when they on-hook the phone.

## 23.6 Configuring Automatic Dialing

Automatic Dialing can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To define Automatic Dialing using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Dialing page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Dialing**).

**Figure 23-5: Web Interface - Dialing - Automatic Dialing**

▼Automatic Dialing

Activate:	Enable
Timeout:	15 Seconds
Destination Phone Number:	0

2. Configure dialing options according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To define Automatic Dialing using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-6: Automatic Dialing Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Activate [voip/dialing/auto_dialing/enabled]	Determines whether automatic dialing is enabled (i.e., phone number is automatically dialed when you off-hook the phone). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Timeout [voip/dialing/auto_dialing/timeout]	Timeout (in seconds) before automatic dialing occurs after the phone is off-hooked. When set to 0, automatic dialing is performed immediately. The valid range is 0 to 120. The default value is 15.
Destination Phone Number [voip/dialing/auto_dialing/destination]	The number that is automatically dialed when the phone is off-hooked. The valid value can be up to 32 characters.

## 23.7 Configuring Automatic Answer

The Automatic Answer feature is configured using the Configuration File. Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-7: Automatic Answer Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>voip/auto_answer/enabled</b>	<p>Enables the Automatic Answering feature.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p>When this parameter is enabled and an incoming SIP INVITE message is received containing information that informs the IP phone to automatically answer the call, the phone answers the call immediately or after a timeout, depending on the auto-answer type specified in the INVITE message:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Phone answers after a timeout:</b> The phone automatically answers the call after a timeout if the INVITE message includes a SIP Call-Info header with a tag value, <b>answer-after=</b> set to a number representing the timeout. During the timeout interval, the phone rings normally. If the call is answered or rejected during this interval, then the automatic answering mechanism is not used. However, if the phone is left to ring throughout the timeout interval, it automatically answers the call once this timeout expires.</li> <li>▪ <b>Phone answers immediately:</b> The phone answers the call immediately in any of the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ If the SIP Alert-Info header contains the tag value <b>ring answer</b>.</li> <li>▪ If the SIP Alert-Info header contains the tag value <b>info=alert-autoanswer</b>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ If the SIP Call-Info header includes all the above answer types or any two different types (i.e., <b>answer-after=</b>, <b>ring answer</b>, and <b>alert-autoanswer</b>), the <b>answer-after=</b> type takes precedence.</li> <li>▪ If there is an existing call when an INVITE message for automatic answer is received, the existing call is automatically put on hold.</li> </ul>
<b>voip/talk_event/enabled</b>	<p>Enables the 'talk' event feature.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p>The phone automatically answers an incoming call if it receives a SIP NOTIFY message with the 'talk' event. If a call is already in progress, the call is put on hold and the incoming call is answered.</p>

## 23.8 Configuring Do Not Disturb (DnD)

The Do not Disturb (DnD) feature can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File. It can also be configured in BroadSoft's BroadWorks (see under Appendix A.1.3).

➤ **To configure DnD using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**).

**Figure 23-6: Web Interface - Services - DnD**

▼DND (Do Not Disturb)	
Enable:	Enable ▼
Activate:	Disable ▼

2. Configure using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure DnD using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-8: Do Not Disturb Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Enable [voip/services/do_not_disturb/enabled]	Enables the DnD feature. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable (default)</li> </ul>
Activate [voip/line/%d/do_not_disturb/activated]	Activates the DnD feature per phone line, if the parameter 'voip/services/do_not_disturb/enabled' is enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] - Activate (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] - Deactivate</li> </ul> <p>Three DnD configurations are possible in phones' idle screens: (1) If DnD is disabled, no notification will be displayed (2) If DnD is enabled for one line extension, one notification is displayed (3) If DnD is configured for two line extensions, two notifications are displayed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> DnD can also be activated using the LCD screen interface (more common).</p>

➤ **To configure DnD in the phone's LCD:**

- Refer to the *User's Manual* for detailed information.

## 23.9 Configuring Message Waiting Indication

The Message Waiting Indication (MWI) feature can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

➤ **To configure MWI using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** > **Services**).

**Figure 23-7: Web Interface - Services - MWI**

Message Waiting Indication (MWI)	
Voice Mail Number:	<input type="text"/>
Activate:	Enable ▾
Subscribe To MWI:	Enable ▾
MWI Server IP Address or Host Name:	0.0.0.0
MWI Server Port:	5060
MWI Subscribe Expiry Time:	3600 Seconds

2. Configure using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure MWI using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-9: MWI Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Voice Mail Number [voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/voice_mail_number]	Defines the extension number for accessing your voice mail messages. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The valid value is up to 64 characters.</li> </ul>
Activate [voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/enabled]	Enables the MWI feature. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable (default)</li> </ul>
Subscribe To MWI [voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/subscribe]	Determines whether the phone registers to an MWI server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
MWI Server IP Address or Host Name [voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/subscribe_address]	The IP address or host name of the MWI server. Default: 0.0.0.0
MWI Server Port [voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/subscribe_port]	The port number of the MWI server. Range: 1024-65535. Default: 5060.
MWI Subscribe Expiry Time [voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/expiration_timeout]	The interval between the MWI Subscribe messages. Range:0-86400. Default: 3600
[voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/always_send_port]	If the SIP port is the default port (i.e. 5060), then remove it from the Request-URI of the MWI SUBSCRIBE. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable (default)</li> </ul>

## 23.10 Configuring Advice of Charge

The Advice of Charge (AOC) feature can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File. The feature permits an accurate estimate of the size of the bill which will eventually be charged to be displayed.

➤ **To configure AOC using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Services**) and then scroll down to AOC Support.

**Figure 23-8: Web Interface - Services – AOC Support**

▼AOC Support	
Enabled:	<input type="button" value="Enable"/> ▼
Currency:	<input type="text" value="usd"/>
Ratio:	<input type="text" value="1"/>

2. Configure the AOC parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure AOC using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-10: AOC Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Enable [system/aoc/enabled]	Enables the 'advice of charge' feature. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Currency [system/aoc/currency]	Sets the required currency for AOC display. The string represents the currency name. (e.g., USD, EUR, NIS, etc.)
Ratio [system/aoc/ratio]	Sets the conversion ratio from the local currency. The string represents the ratio between the base currency to the set currency with a decimal point, e.g., : 3.8, 4.95, 1.

## 23.11 Disabling the HOLD Key

This section shows how to disable the **HOLD** key on the phone's keypad.

- **To disable the HOLD key using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-11: Disabling the HOLD Key**

Parameter	Description
[system/disable_hold_button]	Disables the HOLD key on the phone's keypad. The HOLD key is used to place a call on hold, or to resume a held call.

## 23.12 Configuring Ringing on the Default Audio Device

This section shows how to configure whether ringing is heard on the default audio device.

- **To configure whether ringing is heard on the default audio device, using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-12: Configuring Ringing on the Default Audio Device**

Parameter	Description
[voip/called_ringing_device]	<p>Determines which device rings when a call comes in. Configure either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>SPEAKER</b> (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>HEADSET</b></li> <li>▪ <b>BOTH</b></li> <li>▪ <b>NO_RING</b></li> </ul> <p>In call centers in which agents typically work close to one another wearing headsets, the administrator can configure <b>HEADSET</b> to prevent incoming calls ringing on speakers which creates a noisy environment.</p> <p>The parameter is bundled with the two parameters below ('hands_free_mode' and 'supervisor_listen_in') to maximize flexibility for call center administrators, who can - for example - disable ringing on the speaker yet enable hands-free mode (talking and listening using the speaker).</p>
[voip/hands_free_mode/enabled]	<p>When disabled [0]:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ hands-free mode becomes unavailable</li> <li>▪ pressing the speaker key does not have any effect</li> <li>▪ when answering a call, the headset is the default audio</li> </ul> <p>Configure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [1] = Enabled (default)</li> <li>▪ [0] = Disabled</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
[voip/services/supervisor_listen_in/enabled]	<p>If enabled, a call center supervisor can pick up an agent's handset and listen in on the conversation that the agent is conducting on headphones with the customer, without the customer at the other end sensing that the supervisor is listening in (because the supervisor is in effect muted).</p> <p>Configure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [1] = Enabled</li> <li>▪ [0] = Disabled (default)</li> </ul>

## 23.13 Allowing an Incoming Call when the Phone is Locked

This section shows how to allow or not allow an incoming call when the phone is locked.

- **To allow an incoming call when the phone is locked, using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 23-13: Allowing an Incoming Call when the Phone is Locked**

Parameter	Description
[system/lock/2-5/allow_incoming_calls]	<p>Allows incoming calls when the phone is locked (default).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ If allowed, the user will need to enter an unlock password to answer an incoming call.</li> <li>▪ If not allowed, the incoming call will be automatically rejected by the phone.</li> </ul>
[system/lock/2-5/enabled]	<p>Enables the phone's lock feature. Relevant for supporting servers only.</p>

## 23.14 Allowing Call Center Agents to Record Welcome Greetings

This section shows how to let Call Center agents record welcome greetings.

- **To let Call Center agents record welcome greetings, using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

Table 23-14: Letting Call Center Agents Record Welcome Greetings

Parameter	Description
[voip/services/greeting/beep/enabled]	Enables a beep to be heard by the agent when the recorded welcome greeting finishes playing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [1] = Enabled (default)</li> <li>▪ [0] = Disabled</li> </ul>
[voip/services/greeting/enabled]	Lets agents in a call center record directly on their phones personal voice greetings which play automatically when callers call in, to welcome callers to the service they're seeking. Configure: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [1] = Enabled</li> <li>▪ [0] = Disabled (default)</li> </ul>

## 23.15 Configuring Attended and Semi-Attended Call Transfer

This section shows how to configure a softkey with attended and semi-attended call transfer functionality, using the Configuration File.

- **To configure a softkey with attended / semi-attended call transfer functionality:**

Use the table below as reference:

Table 23-15: Configuring a Softkey with Attended and Semi-Attended Call Transfer Functionality

Parameter	Description
[personal_settings/soft_keys/ongoing_call/0/key_function]	Default: <b>Hold</b> . Change it to <b>TRANSFER</b> to configure the softkey with attended / semi-attended call transfer functionality.

## 23.16 Configuring Blind Transfer

You can configure a softkey with blind transfer functionality using the Configuration File.

- **To configure a softkey with blind transfer functionality:**

Use the table below as reference:

Table 23-16: Configuring a Key with Blind Transfer Functionality

Parameter	Description
[personal_settings/soft_keys/ongoing_call/0/key_function]	Default: <b>Hold</b> . Change it to <b>BLIND_TRANSFER</b> to configure the softkey with blind transfer functionality.

## 23.17 Creating a Speed Dial File for Configuration File

The configuration file can include a link to a user-defined Speed Dial file, using the **provisioning/speed\_dial\_uri** parameter. This allows you to upload speed dial settings to the phone.

The Speed Dial file must include a list of speed dial configurations. The file must be a simple text file that can be created using an Excel document and saved as a CSV file.

The syntax of the speed dial file is as follows:

```
<memory key>,<speed dial phone number>,<type>
```

where:

<memory key> is the speed dial memory key on the phone.

<speed dial phone number> is the phone number that is automatically dialed, when the user presses the speed dial key.

<type> denotes the Speed Dial feature and must be set to "0".

Below is an example of a Speed Dial file:

```
1,4418,0
2,4403,0
3,039764432,0
4,4391,0
12,1234,0
```

## 24 Configuring Volume Levels

This section shows how to configure volume levels.

### 24.1 Configuring Gain Control

Automatic Gain Control can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values.

➤ **To configure Automatic Gain Control using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Voice page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Voice**).

**Figure 24-1: Web Interface - Voice - Gain Control**

The screenshot shows the 'Voice' configuration page with a 'Gain Control' section. The settings are as follows:

- Gain Control:**
  - Max Gain: 15 dB
  - Fast Adaptation Gain Slope: 3.50 dB/sec
  - Fast Adaptation Duration (0 - 65535): 1500 msec
- Hands Free:**
- Narrow Band:**
  - Slow Adaptation Gain Slope: 1.00 dB/sec
  - Automatic Gain Control Direction: For Remote User
  - Enable Automatic Gain Control: Disable
  - Target Energy: -19 dBm
- Wide Band:**
  - Slow Adaptation Gain Slope: 1.00 dB/sec
  - Automatic Gain Control Direction: For Remote User
  - Enable Automatic Gain Control: Disable
  - Target Energy: -19 dBm
- Handset:**
- Narrow Band:**
  - Slow Adaptation Gain Slope: 1.00 dB/sec
  - Automatic Gain Control Direction: For Remote User

2. Configure the settings according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure Automatic Gain Control using the Configuration File:**

- Use [Table 24-1](#) below as reference.

**Table 24-1: Automatic Gain Control Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Max Gain	The index of the maximal gain. Default: 15 dB. The index runs from 0 (0 dB) to 18 (18 dB).

Parameter	Description
Fast Adaptation Gain Slope	The rate of changes in Automatic Gain Control gain during Fast Adaptation Mode. Default: 19 (10dB/sec). 0.25-70.00 10dB/sec.
Fast Adaptation Duration (0 - 65535)	The duration of the Fast Adaptation Mode, in msec. Default: 1500 msec.
Slow Adaptation Gain Slope	The rate of changes in Automatic Gain Control gain during Slow Adaptation Mode. Default: 19 (10dB/sec). 0.25-70.00 10dB/sec.
Enable Automatic Gain Control [voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/enabled]	Enables the AGC. AGC automatically adjusts the phone's voice volume to compensate for weak or loud signals. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[0] Disable (default)</li> <li>[1] Enable</li> </ul>
Automatic Gain Control Direction [voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/direction]	Determines whether AGC is located before the encoder input (CTL_LOCAL) or after the decoder output (CTL_REMOTE). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[CTL_REMOTE] For Remote User (default) - AGC is located after the Decoder output</li> <li>[CTL_LOCAL] For Local User - AGC is located before the Encoder input</li> </ul>
Target Energy [voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/target_energy]	The required output energy (in dBm) of the AGC. The valid range is -31 to 0 (dB). The default value is -19.
[voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/NB/handset_target_energy]	Default = -16
[voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/NB/headset_target_energy]	The valid range is -31 to 0 Default = -16
[voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/WB/handset_target_energy]	Default = -16
[voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/WB/headset_target_energy]	The valid range is -31 to 0 Default = -16
[voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/fast_adap_gain_slope]	Default = 3_50 Valid values: [REBOOT], [0_25], [0_50], [0_75], [1_00], [1_25], [1_50], [1_75], [2_00], [2_50], [3_00], [3_50], [4_00], [4_50], [5_00], [5_50], [6_00], [7_00], [8_00], [9_00], [10_00], [11_00], [12_00], [13_00], [14_00], [15_00], [20_00], [25_00], [30_00], [35_00], [40_00], [50_00], [70_00]
[voip/audio/gain/automatic_gain_control/max_gain]	Default = 15 The valid range is 0 to 18

## 24.2 Configuring Tone Volume

Tone volume can be configured using the Configuration File.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values.

- **To configure tone volume using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 24-2: Tone Volume Parameter**

Parameter	Description
Tone Volume <b>[voip/audio/gain/tone_signal_level]</b>	Call Progress Tone volume. This volume can be modified on-the-fly by pressing the phone's VOLUME key in certain scenarios. The valid range is 1 to 31 (-dB). The default value is 10 (-10dB).

## 24.3 Configuring Ringer Volume

The ringer volume can be configured using the Configuration File.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values.

- **To configure the ringer volume using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 24-3: Ringer Volume Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Ringer Volume <b>voip/audio/gain/ringer_signal_level</b>	Ring tone volume. This volume can be modified on-the-fly by pressing the phone's VOLUME key when the phone is in idle state. The valid range is [-31] to [31] dB

## 24.4 Configuring Speaker Volume

The speaker volume can be configured using the Configuration File.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values.

➤ **To configure speaker volume using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 24-4: Speaker Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>Hands-free Gain Parameters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Note:</b> Values are in decibels (dB)Decimal places: Use underscore instead of period (e.g.,<b>plus19_5db</b>).</li> </ul>	
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/handsfree_digital_input_gain]</b>	Digital input gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 6. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/handsfree_digital_output_gain]</b>	Digital output gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 5. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/handsfree_digital_input_gain]</b>	Digital input gain (in dB) – Wide Band. Default = 6. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/handsfree_digital_output_gain]</b>	Digital output gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 5. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/handsfree_analog_output_gain]</b>	Analog output gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Valid values: <b>[0db], [minus1_5db], [minus3db], [minus4_5db], [minus6db], [minus7_5db], [minus9db], [minus10_5db], [minus12db], [minus13_5db], [minus15db], [minus16_5db], [minus18db], [minus19_5db], [minus21db], [minus22_5db], [minus24db], [minus25_5db], [minus27db], [minus28_5db], [minus30db], [minus31_5db], [minus33db], [minus34_5db], [minus36db], [minus37_5db], [minus39db], [minus39db], [minus42db], [minus48db], [minus54db], [MUTE]</b>

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/handsfree_analog_output_gain]</b>	<p>Analog output gain (in dB) – Wide Band.</p> <p>Valid values:</p> <p><b>[0db]</b> (default), <b>[minus1_5db]</b>, <b>[minus3db]</b>, <b>[minus4_5db]</b>, <b>[minus6db]</b>, <b>[minus7_5db]</b>, <b>[minus9db]</b>, <b>[minus10_5db]</b>, <b>[minus12db]</b>, <b>[minus13_5db]</b>, <b>[minus15db]</b>, <b>[minus16_5db]</b>, <b>[minus18db]</b>, <b>[minus19_5db]</b>, <b>[minus21db]</b>, <b>[minus22_5db]</b>, <b>[minus24db]</b>, <b>[minus25_5db]</b>, <b>[minus27db]</b>, <b>[minus28_5db]</b>, <b>[minus30db]</b>, <b>[minus31_5db]</b>, <b>[minus33db]</b>, <b>[minus34_5db]</b>, <b>[minus36db]</b>, <b>[minus37_5db]</b>, <b>[minus39db]</b>, <b>[minus39db]</b>, <b>[minus42db]</b>, <b>[minus48db]</b>, <b>[minus54db]</b>, <b>[MUTE]</b></p>
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/handsfree_analog_input_gain]</b>	<p>Analog input gain (in dB) – Narrow Band</p> <p>Valid values: <b>[0db]</b>, <b>[plus1_5db]</b>, <b>[plus3db]</b>, <b>[plus4_5db]</b>, <b>[plus6db]</b>, <b>[plus7_5db]</b>, <b>[plus9db]</b>, <b>[plus10_5db]</b>, <b>[plus12db]</b>, <b>[plus13_5db]</b>, <b>[plus15db]</b>, <b>[plus16_5db]</b>, <b>[plus18db]</b>, <b>[plus19_5db]</b>, <b>[plus21db]</b>, <b>[plus22_5db]</b>, <b>[plus24db]</b>, <b>[plus25_5db]</b>, <b>[plus27db]</b>, <b>[plus28_5db]</b>, <b>[plus30db]</b>, <b>[plus31_5db]</b>, <b>[plus33db]</b>, <b>[plus34_5db]</b>, <b>[plus36db]</b>, <b>[plus37_5db]</b>, <b>[plus39db]</b>, <b>[plus40_5db]</b>, <b>[PLUS42DB]</b> (default), <b>[plus48db]</b>, <b>[plus54db]</b>, <b>[MUTE]</b></p>
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/handsfree_analog_input_gain]</b>	<p>Analog input gain (in dB) – Wide Band.</p> <p>Valid values: <b>[0db]</b>, <b>[plus1_5db]</b>, <b>[plus3db]</b>, <b>[plus4_5db]</b>, <b>[plus6db]</b>, <b>[plus7_5db]</b>, <b>[plus9db]</b>, <b>[plus10_5db]</b>, <b>[plus12db]</b>, <b>[plus13_5db]</b>, <b>[plus15db]</b>, <b>[plus16_5db]</b>, <b>[plus18db]</b>, <b>[plus19_5db]</b>, <b>[plus21db]</b>, <b>[plus22_5db]</b>, <b>[plus24db]</b>, <b>[plus25_5db]</b>, <b>[plus27db]</b>, <b>[plus28_5db]</b>, <b>[plus30db]</b>, <b>[plus31_5db]</b>, <b>[plus33db]</b>, <b>[plus34_5db]</b>, <b>[plus36db]</b>, <b>[plus37_5db]</b>, <b>[plus39db]</b>, <b>[plus40_5db]</b>, <b>[PLUS42DB]</b> (default), <b>[plus48db]</b>, <b>[plus54db]</b>, <b>[MUTE]</b></p>
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/additional_speaker_gain]</b>	<p>Additional parameter for speaker gain configuration, for Narrow Band.</p> <p>Valid values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> 0dB</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> 1dB</li> <li>▪ <b>[2]</b> 2dB</li> <li>▪ <b>[3]</b> 3Db (default)</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
[voip/audio/gain/WB/additional_speaker_gain]	Additional parameter for speaker gain configuration, for Wide Band. Valid values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] 0dB</li> <li>▪ [1] 1dB</li> <li>▪ [2] 2dB</li> <li>▪ [3] 3dB (default)</li> </ul>

## 24.5 Configuring Handset Volume

The handset volume can be configured using the Configuration File.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values.

➤ **To configure handset volume using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 24-5: Handset Gain Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>Handset Gain Parameters</b> <b>Note:</b> Values are in decibels (dB)	
[voip/audio/gain/NB/handset_digital_output_gain]	Digital output gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 2. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
[voip/audio/gain/NB/handset_digital_input_gain]	Digital input gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 0. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
[voip/audio/gain/WB/handset_digital_input_gain]	Digital input gain (in dB) – Wide Band. Default = 0. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
[voip/audio/gain/WB/handset_digital_output_gain]	Digital output gain (in dB) – Wide Band. Default = 2. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.

Parameter	Description
[voip/audio/gain/NB/handset_analog_output_gain]	<p>Analog output gain (in dB), for Narrow Band. Valid values:</p> <p><b>[0DB]</b> (default), <b>[minus1_5db]</b>, <b>[minus3db]</b>, <b>[minus4_5db]</b>, <b>[minus6db]</b>, <b>[minus7_5db]</b>, <b>[minus9db]</b>, <b>[minus10_5db]</b>, <b>[minus12db]</b>, <b>[minus13_5db]</b>, <b>[minus15db]</b>, <b>[minus16_5db]</b>, <b>[minus18db]</b>, <b>[minus19_5db]</b>, <b>[minus21db]</b>, <b>[minus22_5db]</b>, <b>[minus24db]</b>, <b>[minus25_5db]</b>, <b>[minus27db]</b>, <b>[minus28_5db]</b>, <b>[minus30db]</b>, <b>[minus31_5db]</b>, <b>[minus33db]</b>, <b>[minus34_5db]</b>, <b>[minus36db]</b>, <b>[minus37_5db]</b>, <b>[minus39db]</b>, <b>[minus39db]</b>, <b>[minus42db]</b>, <b>[minus48db]</b>, <b>[minus54db]</b>, <b>[MUTE]</b></p>
[voip/audio/gain/WB/handset_analog_output_gain]	<p>Analog output gain (in dB), for Wide Band. Valid values:</p> <p><b>[0DB]</b> (default), <b>[minus1_5db]</b>, <b>[minus3db]</b>, <b>[minus4_5db]</b>, <b>[minus6db]</b>, <b>[minus7_5db]</b>, <b>[minus9db]</b>, <b>[minus10_5db]</b>, <b>[minus12db]</b>, <b>[minus13_5db]</b>, <b>[minus15db]</b>, <b>[minus16_5db]</b>, <b>[minus18db]</b>, <b>[minus19_5db]</b>, <b>[minus21db]</b>, <b>[minus22_5db]</b>, <b>[minus24db]</b>, <b>[minus25_5db]</b>, <b>[minus27db]</b>, <b>[minus28_5db]</b>, <b>[minus30db]</b>, <b>[minus31_5db]</b>, <b>[minus33db]</b>, <b>[minus34_5db]</b>, <b>[minus36db]</b>, <b>[minus37_5db]</b>, <b>[minus39db]</b>, <b>[minus39db]</b>, <b>[minus42db]</b>, <b>[minus48db]</b>, <b>[minus54db]</b>, <b>[MUTE]</b></p>
[voip/audio/gain/NB/handset_analog_input_gain]	<p>Analog input gain (in dB), for Narrow Band. Default: <b>PLUS30DB</b> Valid values:</p> <p><b>[0dB]</b>, <b>[plus1_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus3dB]</b>, <b>[plus4_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus6dB]</b>, <b>[plus7_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus9dB]</b>, <b>[plus10_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus12dB]</b>, <b>[plus13_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus15dB]</b>, <b>[plus16_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus18dB]</b>, <b>[plus19_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus21dB]</b>, <b>[plus22_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus24dB]</b>, <b>[plus25_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus27dB]</b>, <b>[plus28_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus30dB]</b>, <b>[plus31_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus33dB]</b>, <b>[plus34_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus36dB]</b>, <b>[plus37_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus39dB]</b>, <b>[plus40_5dB]</b>, <b>[plus42dB]</b>, <b>[plus48dB]</b>, <b>[plus54dB]</b>, <b>[MUTE]</b></p>

Parameter	Description
[voip/audio/gain/WB/handset_analog_input_gain]	Analog input gain (in dB), for Wide Band. Default: <b>PLUS30DB</b> Valid values: [0dB], [plus1_5dB], [plus3dB], [plus4_5dB], [plus6dB], [plus7_5dB], [plus9dB], [plus10_5dB], [plus12dB], [plus13_5dB], [plus15dB], [plus16_5dB], [plus18dB], [plus19_5dB], [plus21dB], [plus22_5dB], [plus24dB], [plus25_5dB], [plus27dB], [plus28_5dB], [plus30dB], [plus31_5dB], [plus33dB], [plus34_5dB], [plus36dB], [plus37_5dB], [plus39dB], [plus40_5dB], [plus42dB], [plus48dB], [plus54dB], [MUTE]
[voip/audio/gain/handset_analog_sidetone_gain]	Analog side tone gain (in db). Valid values: [minus9db], [MINUS21DB] (default), [minus15db], [minus18db], [minus21db], [minus24db], [minus27db], [MUTE]

## 24.6 Configuring Headset Volume

Headset volume can be configured using the Configuration File.



**Note:** It's strongly advisable *not* to change the default values.

### ➤ To configure headset volume using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 24-6: Headset Gain Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>Headset Gain Parameters</b> <b>Note:</b> Values are in decibels (dB) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decimal places: Use underscore instead of period (e.g., <b>plus19_5db</b>).</li> </ul>	
[voip/audio/gain/NB/headset_digital_output_gain]	Digital output gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 4. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
[voip/audio/gain/NB/headset_digital_input_gain]	Digital input gain (in dB) – Narrow Band. Default = 0. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/headset_digital_output_gain]</b>	Digital output gain (in dB) – Wide Band. Default = -4. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/headset_digital_input_gain]</b>	Digital input gain (in dB) – Wide Band. Default = 0. The valid range is (-32) to 31 (dB), where -32 is mute.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/headset_analog_output_gain]</b>	Analog output gain (in dB), for Narrow Band. Valid values: <b>[0DB]</b> (default), <b>[minus1_5db]</b> , <b>[minus3db]</b> , <b>[minus4_5db]</b> , <b>[minus6db]</b> , <b>[minus7_5db]</b> , <b>[minus9db]</b> , <b>[minus10_5db]</b> , <b>[minus12db]</b> , <b>[minus13_5db]</b> , <b>[minus15db]</b> , <b>[minus16_5db]</b> , <b>[minus18db]</b> , <b>[minus19_5db]</b> , <b>[minus21db]</b> , <b>[minus22_5db]</b> , <b>[minus24db]</b> , <b>[minus25_5db]</b> , <b>[minus27db]</b> , <b>[minus28_5db]</b> , <b>[minus30db]</b> , <b>[minus31_5db]</b> , <b>[minus33db]</b> , <b>[minus34_5db]</b> , <b>[minus36db]</b> , <b>[minus37_5db]</b> , <b>[minus39db]</b> , <b>[minus39db]</b> , <b>[minus42db]</b> , <b>[minus48db]</b> , <b>[minus54db]</b> , <b>[MUTE]</b>
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/headset_analog_output_gain]</b>	As above, but for Wide Band.
<b>[voip/audio/gain/NB/headset_analog_input_gain]</b>	Analog input gain (in dB). Valid values: <b>[PLUS31_5DB]</b> (default), <b>[plus1_5db]</b> , <b>[plus3db]</b> , <b>[plus4_5db]</b> , <b>[plus6db]</b> , <b>[plus7_5db]</b> , <b>[plus9db]</b> , <b>[plus10_5db]</b> , <b>[plus12db]</b> , <b>[plus13_5db]</b> , <b>[plus15db]</b> , <b>[plus16_5db]</b> , <b>[plus18db]</b> , <b>[plus19_5db]</b> , <b>[plus21db]</b> , <b>[plus22_5db]</b> , <b>[plus24db]</b> , <b>[plus25_5db]</b> , <b>[plus27db]</b> , <b>[plus28_5db]</b> , <b>[plus30db]</b> , <b>[plus31_5db]</b> , <b>[plus33db]</b> , <b>[plus34_5db]</b> , <b>[plus36db]</b> , <b>[plus37_5db]</b> , <b>[plus39db]</b> , <b>[plus40_5db]</b> , <b>[plus42db]</b> , <b>[plus48db]</b> , <b>[plus54db]</b> , <b>[MUTE]</b>
<b>[voip/audio/gain/WB/headset_analog_input_gain]</b>	Analog input gain (in dB). Valid values: <b>[0db]</b> , <b>[plus1_5db]</b> , <b>[plus3db]</b> , <b>[plus4_5db]</b> , <b>[plus6db]</b> , <b>[plus7_5db]</b> , <b>[plus9db]</b> , <b>[plus10_5db]</b> , <b>[plus12db]</b> , <b>[plus13_5db]</b> , <b>[plus15db]</b> , <b>[plus16_5db]</b> , <b>[plus18db]</b> , <b>[PLUS31_5DB]</b> (default), <b>[plus21db]</b> , <b>[plus22_5db]</b> , <b>[plus24db]</b> , <b>[plus25_5db]</b> , <b>[plus27db]</b> , <b>[plus28_5db]</b> , <b>[plus30db]</b> , <b>[plus31_5db]</b> , <b>[plus33db]</b> , <b>[plus34_5db]</b> , <b>[plus36db]</b> , <b>[plus37_5db]</b> , <b>[plus39db]</b> , <b>[plus40_5db]</b> , <b>[plus42db]</b> , <b>[plus48db]</b> , <b>[plus54db]</b> , <b>[MUTE]</b>
<b>[voip/audio/gain/headset_analog_sidetone_gain]</b>	Analog side tone gain (in db). Valid values: <b>[minus9db]</b> , <b>[MINUS12DB]</b> (default), <b>[minus15db]</b> , <b>[minus18db]</b> , <b>[minus21db]</b> , <b>[minus24db]</b> , <b>[minus27db]</b> , <b>[MUTE]</b>



# **Part VI**

## **Advanced Phone Settings**

## 25 Configuring the Phone Directory

This section shows how to configure the phone directory.

### 25.1 Configuring the Corporate Directory

The Corporate Directory can be configured using the Web interface or Configuration File.

#### 25.1.1 Configuring the LDAP-based Corporate Directory

This section shows how to configure Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), which is an application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an IP network. It is fully described under RFC 4510.

➤ **To configure LDAP using the Web interface:**

1. Access the LDAP page (**Configuration** tab > **Advanced Applications** > **LDAP**). If LDAP is set to **Enable**, extended configuration parameters are displayed.

**Figure 25-1: Web Interface - LDAP**

Active:	Enable
Server Address:	
Port:	389
User Name:	
Password:	
Base:	
Name Filter:	((sn=%)(givenname=%)(displayname=
Name Attributes:	sn givenname displayname
Number Filter:	((telephoneNumber=%)(Mobile=%)(ho
Number Attributes:	telephoneNumber Mobile homePhone
Display Name:	%displayname
Max Hits:	50 (1~1000)
Country Code:	
Area Code:	
Sort Result:	Enable
Search Timeout:	5 seconds
Call Lookup:	Enable

3. Configure the LDAP settings according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure LDAP using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 25-1: LDAP Parameters**

Parameter Name	Description
Active [system/ldap/enabled]	Enables or disable LDAP.
Server Address [system/ldap/server_address]	Defines the IP address or URL of the LDAP server.

Parameter Name	Description
Port <b>[system/ldap/port]</b>	Defines the LDAP service port.
User Name <b>[system/ldap/user_name]</b>	Defines the user name used for the LDAP search request.
Password <b>[system/ldap/password]</b>	Defines the password of the search requester.
Base <b>[system/ldap/base]</b>	Defines the access point on the LDAP tree.
Name Filter <b>[system/ldap/name_filter]</b>	<p>Specifies your search pattern for name look ups. For example:</p> <p>When you type in the following field: <code>(&amp;(telephoneNumber=*)(sn=%))</code>, the search result includes all LDAP records, which have the 'telephoneNumber' field set and the '("sn"--&gt;surname)' field starting with the entered prefix.</p> <p>When you type in the following field: <code>((cn=%)(sn=%))</code>, the search result includes all LDAP records which have the '("cn"--&gt;CommonName)' OR '("sn"--&gt;Surname)' field starting with the entered prefix.</p> <p>When you type in the following field: <code>(!(cn=%))</code>, the search result includes all LDAP records which "do not" have the "cn" field starting with the entered prefix.</p>
Name Attribute <b>[system/ldap/name_attrs]</b>	<p>Specifies the LDAP name attributes setting, which can be used to specify the "name" attributes of each record which is returned in the LDAP search results.</p> <p>When you type in the following field, for example, <code>cn sn displayName</code>, this requires you to specify 'cn--&gt;commonName'. This is the Full name of the user, sn--&gt;Surname, last name or family name and "displayName" fields for each LDAP record.</p>
Number Filter <b>[system/ldap/number_filter]</b>	<p>Specifies your search pattern for number look ups.</p> <p>When you type in the following field, for example, <code>((telephoneNumber=%)(Mobile=%)(ipPhone=%))</code>, the search result is all LDAP records which have the "telephoneNumber" OR "Mobile" OR "ipPhone" field match the number being searched.</p> <p>When you type in the following field: <code>(&amp;(telephoneNumber=%)(sn=*))</code>, the search result is all LDAP records which have the "sn" field set and the "telephoneNumber" match the number being searched.</p>

Parameter Name	Description
Number Attribute <b>[system/ldap/number_attrs]</b>	Specifies the LDAP number attributes setting, which can be used to specify the “number” attributes of each record which is returned in the LDAP search results.  When you type in the following field, for example, <i>Mobile telephoneNumber iPhone</i> , you must specify 'Mobile', 'telephoneNumber' and 'iPhone' fields for each LDAP record.
Display Name <b>[system/ldap/display_name]</b>	Specifies the format in which the “name, e.g. “Mike Black” of each returned search result is displayed on the IPPHONE.  When you type in the following field, foreexample: <b>%sn, %givenName</b> , the displayed result returned should be “Black, Mike”.
Max Hits <b>[system/ldap/max_hits]</b>	Specifies the maximum number of entries expected to be sent by the LDAP server (this parameter is sent to the LDAP server).
Sort Result <b>[system/ldap/sorting_result]</b>	Sorts the search result by display name on the client side.
<b>system/ldap/predict_text</b>	This parameter appears in the configuration file; however, it is currently not supported.
Search Timeout <b>[system/ldap/search_timeout]</b>	The time out value for LDAP search (this parameter is sent to the LDAP server).
<b>system/ldap/ui/use_right_arrow_active_search</b>	This parameter appears in the configuration file; however, it is currently not supported.
<b>system/ldap/lookup_incoming_call</b>	This parameter appears in the configuration file; however, it is currently not supported.
Call Lookup <b>[system/ldap/call_lookup]</b>	Performs an LDAP search during call (search the display name for a number).
Country Code <b>[system/ldap/country_code]</b>	Defines the country code prefix added for number search.
Area Code <b>[system/ldap/area_code]</b>	Defines the area code prefix added for number search.
<b>system/ldap/minimal_name_search_length</b>	Starts to perform an LDAP search after x characters are input.
<b>system/ldap/send_queries_while_typing</b>	Sends an LDAP search each time the user presses a key (all keys with both number and letters).

## 25.1.2 Loading a Text-based Corporate Directory File

The Configuration file can include a link to a user-defined Corporate Directory file, using the 'provisioning/corporate\_directory\_uri' parameter. This allows you to upload a corporate directory to the phone.

Three types of corporate directory files are supported: txt, cfg, and xml

The corporate directory file includes a list of contacts and their phone numbers.

The syntax of the corporate directory file must be as follows:

```
<full name>,<office>,<home>,<mobile>
```

For example:

```
John Smith,1234,98765432,574685746
```

If not all phone numbers are required, the relevant field must be left empty. For example, in the directory entry below, the home and user-defined numbers are absent:

```
John Smith,1234,,574685746
```

### ➤ To configure the Corporate Directory using the Web interface:

1. Prepare the file as explained above.
2. Access the Directory page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Directory**).
3. Click **Browse** and select the file to upload.
4. Click Load Corporate Directory.

**Figure 25-2: Web Interface - Corporate Directory**

5. Configure the Corporate Directory settings according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

### ➤ To configure the Corporate Directory using the Configuration File:

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 25-2: Provisioning Parameters**

Parameter	Description
provisioning/corporate_directory_uri	<p>The URI for retrieving the corporate directory. The corporate directory must be included in a separate file to be loaded to the phone during provisioning.</p> <p>For example:  <b>provisioning/corporate_directory_uri=corporate_dir.txt</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The corporate directory file is loaded after boot up and after that, periodically.</li> <li>▪ If the corporate directory file is new, the phone updates the information and does not reboot.</li> </ul>

## 25.2 Modifying the Local Phone Directory

You can add, edit, or delete directory contacts. A contact's address can be a telephone number, IP address, or domain name. You can also download or upload a personal directory file through the Web interface.

➤ **To add a contact to the phone's directory:**

1. Access the Directory page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Directory**).

**Figure 25-3: Web Interface - Directory - Add Contact**

The screenshot displays the 'Directory' web interface. At the top, there's a 'Directory' header. Below it is the 'Add Contact' section with a form containing four input fields: 'Name:', 'Office:', 'Home:', and 'Mobile:'. To the right of these fields is a 'Submit' button with a checkmark icon. Below the 'Add Contact' section is the 'Personal Directory' section. It features a 'Directory Page:' dropdown menu currently set to '1'. To the right of the dropdown are three buttons: 'Save Personal Directory', 'Browse...', and 'Load Personal Directory'. At the bottom of the interface is a table with the following columns: 'No.', 'name', 'Office', 'Home', 'Mobile', and 'Select'. The table contains one entry with '1' in the 'No.' column, 'lk' in the 'name' column, and '23222' in the 'Office' column. There is a 'Dial' button next to the 'Office' value. To the right of the 'Mobile' column is a checkbox in the 'Select' column. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Delete All'.

2. Under the **Add Contact** group, define the contact:
3. In the 'Name' field, enter the name of the contact.
4. In the 'Office', 'Home' and/or 'Mobile' fields, enter the contact's telephone numbers. The contact's number can be defined with an IP address or domain name (e.g. <number>@<IP address or domain name>).
5. Click **Submit**; the contact appears in the Directory list at the bottom of the page.

➤ **To edit a contact:**

1. If the contact does not appear in the displayed Directory list, then from the 'Directory Page' drop-down list, select the page in the directory that you want displayed.
2. In the Directory list, click the number that appears in the 'No.' column corresponding to the contact you want to edit; the contact's attributes appear in the **Edit Phone** group above.
3. Edit the contact as required, and then click **Submit**; the contact's new attributes are updated in the Directory list.

➤ **To delete a contact:**

1. In the Directory list, mark the 'Select' check box corresponding to the contact you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. (To delete all contacts, click the **Delete All** button).

## 26 Configuring Keys

This section shows how to configure keys.  
The following keys can be configured:

### 26.1 Configuring Speed Dials



**Note:** This section applies to the 420HD and 405HD phone models.

#### 26.1.1 420HD Phone Models

Up to nine dialpad keys can be configured as Speed Dials. You can configure them in the Web interface or using the Configuration File.

➤ **To configure a dialpad key as a Speed Dial in the Web interface:**

1. In the Web interface, open the Function Keys page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** > **Function Keys**).

**Figure 26-1: Web Interface – Personal Settings – Speed Dials (420HD and 405 Phone Models)**

Key	Type	Number	Delete
1	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
7	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
8	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>
9	Speed Dial ▼		<input type="checkbox"/>

Load and Save

Browse... Save Function Keys Load Function Keys

Submit Delete All Reset

2. In the 'Number' field, enter the phone number to which to assign the Speed Dial. Keys 1-9 correspond to the 1-9 keys on the device's dial pad.
3. After configuring a Speed Dial, click **Submit** for the setting to take effect on the phone.
4. Alternatively, you can use the **Save Function Keys** button to save the configuration in a file, which you can then browse to and load to the phone using the **Load Function Keys** button.
5. You can select one or more configured Speed Dials under the 'Delete' column, and then click the **Delete All** button.

➤ **To configure a key as a Speed Dial using the configuration file:**

- Open the Configuration File page (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** >

**Configuration File)** and locate the Function Key parameters. Use the table below as reference when configuring the parameters.

**Table 26-1: Speed Dials Parameters**

Parameter Name	Description
[personal_settings/functional_key/0-8/speed_dial_extension]	Used to define a label for a Speed Dial.
[personal_settings/functional_key/0/speed_dial_number]	The telephone number which the speed dial dials. The speed-dial feature helps users quickly dial numbers that are frequently used or that are hard to remember.
[personal_settings/functional_key/0/type=SPEED_DIAL]	The feature helps users quickly dial numbers that are often used or that are hard to remember.

## 26.1.2 Deleting Speed Dials

You can delete configured Speed Dials.

➤ **To delete Speed Dials:**

- Check the 'Delete' box corresponding to the Speed Dial that you want to delete, and then click **Submit**  
-or-
- Click the **Delete All** button, and then at the prompt, click **OK**

➤ **To clear (unselect) all selected 'Delete' check boxes:**

- Click the **Reset** button.

## 26.1.3 Saving Configured Speed Dials

After configuring Speed Dials in the Web interface, you can save the configuration in a .cfg file on your computer and then load it to other phones.

➤ **To save Speed Dials in a .cfg file:**

1. Access the Function Keys page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Function Keys**).
2. Click **Save Function Keys**; the configuration is saved in a .cfg file.

### 26.1.4 Creating a Speed Dial File for the Configuration File

The Configuration File parameter 'provisioning/speed\_dial\_uri' can be configured to point to a user-defined Speed Dial file, for speed dial settings to be uploaded to the phone when the cfg file is uploaded.

The Speed Dial file must include a list of speed dial configurations. The file must be a simple text file that can be created using an Excel document and saved as a CSV file.

The syntax of the speed dial file is as follows:

```
<memory key>,<speed dial phone number>,<type>
```

where:

- <memory key> denotes the speed dial memory key on the phone.
- <speed dial phone number> denotes the phone number that is automatically dialed when the user presses the speed dial key.
- <type> denotes the Speed Dial feature and must be set to **0**.

Below is an example of a Speed Dial file:

```
1,4418,0
2,4403,0
3,039764432,0
4,4391,0
12,1234,0
```

## 26.2 Configuring Softkeys

**Note:**

- The section applies to the 420HD and 405 phone models.
- When Genesys' ACD is enabled, the **Soft Keys** item in the Keys Configuration menu is not displayed.

This section describes how to configure softkeys. Four softkeys, located below the LCD, can be configured. Their functionality is context sensitive according to the phone's state. This section shows how to configure softkeys that are activated when the phone is in idle state and when it is in call state.

Following are the four default (preconfigured) softkeys (0-3), when the phone is in idle state and when it is in call state.

**Table 26-2: Default Softkeys**

Key	Idle State	Call State
0	Directory	Hold
1	Missed	Conf
2	Forward	New Call
3	Do Not Disturb (Status)	End

When more than four softkeys are configured, users can scroll to additional pages, where on each configured page, the fourth key becomes the **More** softkey.

- Up to 20 (0-19) softkey functions can be configured for when the phone is in idle call state.
- Up to 20 (0-19) softkey functions can be configured for when the phone is in call state.
- Up to 12 (0-11) programmable softkey (PSKs) functions can be configured to either a call state softkey or an idle state softkey.

➤ To program the softkeys in the Web interface:

1. Open the Programmable Keys page (Configuration tab > Personal Settings menu > Programmable Keys).

Figure 26-2: Web Interface – Softkeys

Key	Function	Number	Label	Delete
1	Directory			<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Missed Calls			<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Forward All			<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Dnd All			<input type="checkbox"/>

Key	Function	Delete
Navigation Control Up	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Navigation Control Down	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Navigation Control Left	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Navigation Control Right	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Ok Button	None	<input type="checkbox"/>

Load and Save

Browse...

Save Programmable Keys

Load Programmable Keys

Submit Delete All

2. Configure the softkey parameters using the table below as reference.

Table 26-3: Softkeys Parameters (420HD/405 Phone)

Parameter Name	Description
Key 1-4	<p>From any of the 1-4 softkeys dropdown menus, you can select one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ None</li> <li>▪ Missed Calls</li> <li>▪ Received Calls</li> <li>▪ Dialed Calls</li> <li>▪ All Calls</li> <li>▪ Directory</li> <li>▪ DnD All</li> <li>▪ Forward All</li> <li>▪ SPEED DIAL</li> <li>▪ SPEED DIAL+BLF</li> <li>▪ SIP Account</li> </ul>

➤ **To configure softkeys using Configuration File**

Use the table below as reference:

**Table 26-4: SoftKey Parameters**

Parameter Name	Description
Softkey [ <b>personal_settings/soft_key/n-n</b> ] (Idle Call State) [ <b>personal_settings/soft_keys/ongoing_call/n-n</b> ] (Ongoing call state)	Indicates the softkey number. Where <n-n> defines the softkey number. Possible values: 0-19
Function (Idle call state): [ <b>personal_settings/soft_key/n-n/key_function</b> ]	Select one of the following key function types for the Idle call state: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Missed_calls</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Received_calls</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Dialed_calls</b></li> <li>▪ <b>All_calls</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Directory</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Dnd_all</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Forward_all</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Speed dial</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Speed dial + blf</b></li> <li>▪ <b>PSK</b></li> </ul>
Function (Ongoing call state): [ <b>personal_settings/soft_keys/ongoing_call/n-n/key_function</b> ]	Select one of the following key function types for the Ongoing call state (configuration file only): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Rec_call</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Transfer</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Blind_transfer</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Hold</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Conf</b></li> <li>▪ <b>New_call</b></li> <li>• <b>End</b></li> <li>▪ <b>PSK</b></li> </ul>
Number <b>personal_settings/soft_key/n-n/speed_dial_number=&lt;number&gt;</b> Where <number> is the telephone number which the speed dial dials.	Define the telephone number which the speed dial dials. The speed-dial feature helps users quickly dial numbers that are frequently used or that are hard to remember.
[ <b>personal_settings/soft_keys/n-n/psk_index</b> ] (Idle call state) [ <b>personal_settings/soft_keys/ongoing_call/n-n/psk_index</b> ] (Ongoing call state)  Where n-n is the softkey number.	Defines the PSK index. This index identifies the PSK which is assigned to the softkey. You can define up to 11 PSKs (0-11). Default=12 (non-valid value) Note that there are separate index number series for the Idle and Ongoing call states. However, each index number represents unique functionality. For example, if you configure psk_index 1 to activate an intercom (an Idle state function), you cannot use the same index (psk_index 1) to connect to a Voicemail server (Ongoing Call state function).

Parameter Name	Description
<b>personal_settings/soft_keys/psk/n-n/is_dial_required=0</b> (Idle and Ongoing call states)  Where n-n is the PSK index number.	Determines whether a personal dialing code is required for the PSK. When this parameter is enabled, the user is prompted on the phone to enter a personal code to activate this event. For example, to connect to a Voicemail server.  This parameter is only applicable when 'Programmable SK' is set as the key_function.
<b>[personal_settings/soft_keys/psk/n-n/PSKlabel]</b> (Idle and Ongoing Call states)  Where n-n is the PSK index number.	Defines the PSK label which is displayed on the phone's LCD screen for the configured PSK.  This parameter is only applicable when 'PSK' is set as the key_function.
<b>[personal_settings/soft_keys/psk/n-n/prefix]</b> (Idle and Ongoing Call states)  Where n-n is the PSK index number.	Defines the prefix which sends a SIP INVITE to the softswitch to activate this feature (event). For example *70.  This parameter is only applicable when 'Programmable SK' is set as the key_function. Up to 128 characters (any characters).

## 26.2.1 Configuring Programmable Softkeys (PSK)

You can configure a programmable key function and assign it to a softkey (Programmable Softkey-PSK) for either idle state or call state. The PSK can be used for performing actions such as connecting to a Voicemail (Ongoing Call state) server, returning the details of the last call (Idle state), connecting to the Conference server (Idle state) and activate an intercom (Idle state). When these softkeys are configured with such functionality, and the user presses these softkeys, the Enterprise's server (softswitch or application server) is instructed to perform these actions. The instructions to the softswitch or application server are applied using a prefix in the SIP INVITE message. An additional feature enables the user to enter a personal code before the softkey functionality can be activated.

For example, the user wishes to activate their Voice Mail to hear messages whenever the softkey configured for this feature is pressed. In this case, the user dials a prefix, for example \*70, and then is prompted to enter a personal code to access their voice mail i.e not configured on the phone, only entered e.g. '1234'. Once this code is entered, the user is connected to the Enterprise's Voice Mail server and can listen to their messages.

The following example shows the configuration of softkey 0 for connecting to a Voicemail server. Note that in this example, psk index-1 is assigned to function key-0.

```
personal_settings/soft_key/0/key_function=PSK
personal_settings/soft_key/0/psk_index=1
personal_settings/soft_keys/psk/1/is_dial_required=1
personal_settings/soft_keys/psk/1/label=Voicemail
personal_settings/soft_keys/psk/1/prefix=*70
```

**Note:**

- You can configure the PSK to perform any action that is supported by your enterprises's softswitch or application server. AudioCodes provides the ability to configure a calling prefix and a dialing code and to include these in the SIP INVITE.
- The PSK can only be configured using the Configuration File.

## 26.3 Configuring Navigation Control Button Positions



**Note:** This section applies to all phone models.

Each of the four positions of the Navigation Control button on the phone, i.e., Up, Down, Left, and Right, as well as its **OK** button, can be configured to perform a one of five functions:

- None (default)
- Missed Calls
- Received Calls
- Dialed Calls
- All Calls
- Directory

For example, from the 'Navigation Control Up' key dropdown in the Navigation Keys section of the page (see the figure below), select **Missed Calls**, and then click the **Submit** button; the user will be able to press the upper rim of the Navigation Control button on their phone in order to display the Missed Calls on the phone's LCD screen.

The **OK** button can also be configured to perform one of these five functions. A **Delete** option adjacent to each Navigation Control key and adjacent to 'Ok Button' can be selected to remove the function from the key/button.

➤ **To configure navigation control button positions in the Web interface:**

1. Open the Programmable Keys page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Programmable Keys**) and locate the Navigation Keys section.

**Figure 26-3: Web Interface - Navigation Keys**

Navigation Keys			
Key	Function		Delete
Navigation Control Up	None	▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
Navigation Control Down	None	▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
Navigation Control Left	None	▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
Navigation Control Right	None	▼	<input type="checkbox"/>
Ok Button	None	▼	<input type="checkbox"/>

2. From the 'Navigation Control Up' key dropdown, select (for example) **Missed Calls**, and then click the **Submit** button; the user will be able to press the upper rim of the Navigation Control button on their phone in order to display the Missed Calls in the phone's LCD.
3. Optionally use the **Delete** checkbox adjacent to each Navigation Control key and adjacent to 'Ok Button' to remove the function.

### 26.3.1 Saving Configured Keys



**Note:** This section applies to all phone models.

After configuring softkeys, the configuration can be saved in a cfg file on a computer and then loaded to other phones.

➤ **To save the configured softkeys in a cfg file:**

1. Access the Programmable Keys page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Programmable Keys**) and locate the Load and Save section.

**Figure 26-4: Web Interface – Load and Save**

2. Click **Save Programmable Keys**; the configured keys are saved in a cfg file.

### 26.3.2 Loading Saved Keys to Phones



**Note:** This section applies to all phone models.

After configuring softkeys, the configuration can be saved in a cfg file on a computer and then loaded to other phones.

➤ **To load the saved keys to other phones:**

1. Access the Programmable Keys page (**Configuration** tab > **Personal Settings** menu > **Programmable Keys**).
2. Click **Browse....** to select the cfg file.
3. Click **Open**; the selected cfg filename and path appear on the Web interface alongside the **Browse...** button.
4. Click **Load Programmable Key**; the file is uploaded to the phone.

## 27 Configuring Multicast Paging

The Multicast Paging feature enables you to multicast live voice paged messages from an IP Phone to other IP Phone extensions that are configured in a configured Paging Group. When the IP Phone extension is assigned to such a group, it can both send and receive live messages to and from all the other extensions in the group respectively. The paging message is multicast via a designated group IP address.

Whenever there is an incoming multicast message and the IP Phone extension is configured in the same Paging Group as the sender of the message, the name of the Paging Group is displayed on the IP Phone's LCD. The user can then either automatically hear the multicast message or be prompted whether or not to hear the message (depending on whether the Barge-in feature is enabled).

The Multicast Paging feature is enabled in the Services menu. The Paging Group is configured by assigning a Function Key for this purpose. You can configure up to 12 Paging Groups, one for each Function Key. You can either assign the IP Phone to an existing Paging Group (that you have already defined for other IP Phone devices) or define a new Paging Group.

The Function Keys can be configured using the Web Interface, Configuration File or on the IP Phone itself. To configure the Function Keys on the IP Phone, refer to the *IP Phone User's Manual*.

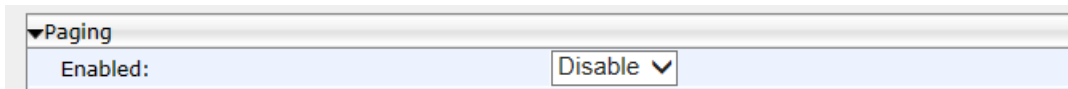
### 27.1 Configuring using the Web Interface

This section shows how to configure the multicast paging feature using the Web Interface.

➤ **To enable Multicast Paging using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page (**Configuration** menu > **Voice Over IP** > **Services**):

**Figure 27-1: Web Interface – Enable Paging**



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring the 'Paging' feature. It includes a section titled 'Paging' with a sub-section 'Enabled:'. Next to 'Enabled:' is a dropdown menu currently showing 'Disable' with a downward arrow.

2. In the Paging pane, from the Enabled drop-down list box, select **Enable**.
3. Configure the Multicast Paging Group; access the Function Keys page (**Configuration** menu > **Voice Over IP** > **Personal Settings** > **Function Keys**).
4. Choose the Function Key that you wish to configure paging, and then from the Type List box, select **Paging**.
5. Configure the Paging Group that you wish to assign to the IP Phone according to the configuration parameters that are described in the table below.
6. Repeat the above procedure for each Paging Group that you wish to configure (assigning a separate Function key for each additional Paging Group).

**Table 27-1: Paging Function Key Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Paging Group Name	The name of the Paging Group. All IP Phone extensions that are assigned to this group are paged whenever one of the extensions in the group multicasts a message.
Paging Multicast Address	The IP address via which multicast messages traverse. When an IP Phone user announces or receives a multicast message, the message traverses this IP address. You should assign a different IP address for each group. This enables the multicasting of paged messages to different groups simultaneously.
Paging Multicast Port	The port via which multicast messages traverse. When an IP Phone user announces

Parameter	Description
	or receives a multicast message, the message traverses this port. This port number does not need to be unique for each Paging Group.

### 27.1.1 Barge-in

Whenever the user is in an active call, they can optionally determine whether they wish to automatically listen to live paged messages or be prompted whenever there is an incoming message.



**Note:** The Barge In feature is only relevant for cases where the IP Phone user receiving the message is currently in an active call. If this user is not in an active call, then the message is played immediately regardless how this parameter is configured.

This parameter is set as follows:

- **Barge-in feature is enabled:** The multicast voice message is played immediately. For example, when there is an active call between party A and party B, and then there is an incoming multicast message from party C, the call between A and B is automatically placed on hold and the message is played to either party A or B or both. Once the message is played, the user can resume the call.
- **Barge-in feature is disabled:** The message is played immediately if you are not in an active call. However, if you are in an active call, when you receive the message, you are prompted whether you wish to listen to the message. For example, when there is an active call between party A and party B, and then there is an incoming multicast message from party C, then if A or B accepts the message, the call is placed on hold and the message is played. Once the message is played, then A or B can resume the call. If on the other hand, A or B rejects the incoming message, then the message is not played and the call is not placed on hold.



**Note:** The above example assumes that party A or party B has enabled this feature and is configured with the same Paging Group that is multicasting the message.

➤ **To enable Barge-in using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Services page section (**Configuration** menu > **Voice Over IP** > **Services**).
2. In the Paging pane, from the 'Enabled' parameter drop-down, select **Enable**; the 'Barge-in' parameter is displayed.
3. In the Paging pane, from the 'Barge-in' parameter drop-down, select **Enable**. Use the screen below as a reference.

Figure 27-2: Web Interface – Enable Barge-in

▼Paging	
Enabled:	Enable ▼
Barge-in:	Enable ▼

➤ **To enable Barge-in using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

Table 27-2: Barge-in Parameters

Parameter	Description
[voip/services/allow_barge_in/enabled]	Enables paging to interrupt (i.e., barge into) a call currently in progress. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disabled (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enabled</li> </ul>



**Note:** See the *IP Phone User's Manual* for examples.

## 27.2 Configuring Using the Configuration File

This section shows how to configure the multicast paging feature using the configuration file.

➤ **To enable Multicast Paging using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

Table 27-3: Paging Parameters

Parameter	Description
[voip/services/group_paging/enabled]	Enables group paging. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disabled (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enabled</li> </ul>
[voip/services/group_paging/group/0-11/activated]	Sets the group to which to page. Default: Group 0
[voip/services/group_paging/group/0-11/multicast_addr]	Sets the multicast address for group 0-11 to which to page. Default: 224.0.0.0
[voip/services/group_paging/group/0-11/name]	Sets the paging group name to display in the LCD.
[voip/services/group_paging/group/0-11/port]	Sets the multicast port for group 0 to which to page. Default: 8888

## 28 Configuring Feature Key Synchronization

This section shows how to configure Feature Key synchronization.

- **To configure Feature Key synchronization using the Configuration File:**
  - Use the table below as reference.

**Table 28-1: Feature Key Synchronization Parameters**

Parameter	Description
[system/feature_key_synchronization/enabled]	Disables/enables Feature Key synchronization.
[system/feature_key_synchronization/forward/0-3/destination]	Forward destination. The number of the telephone to which the call is made.
[system/feature_key_synchronization/status/0-3/fks_status]	<p>The status of the Feature Key synchronization.</p> <p>Select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [FKS_NONE] (Default)</li> <li>▪ FKS_DND]</li> <li>▪ [FKS_CFA]</li> <li>▪ [FKS_CFB] -or-</li> <li>▪ [FKS_CFNA]</li> </ul>



# **Part VII**

## **Security**

## 29 Implementing X.509 Authentication

X.509 certificates can be used to authenticate a connection with a remote server or HTTP/S client browser. The certificates may be implemented in one of or a combination of the following SSL handshake negotiation scenarios:

- The IP phone is a client who needs to authenticate the remote server e.g. provisioning server to which it is attempting to connect.  
In this case, the IP phone needs to load the certificate and Trusted CA used by the remote server.
- The remote server needs to authenticate the incoming connection request from the IP phone client.  
In this case, the remote server needs to load the certificate and Trusted CA used by the IP phone.
- The IP phone is a server who needs to authenticate an incoming connection request from a remote HTTP client browser.  
In this case, the IP phone needs to load the certificate and Trusted CA used by the remote HTTP client browser.
- The remote HTTP client browser needs to authenticate the IP phone to which it is attempting to connect.  
In this case, the remote HTTP client browser needs to load the certificate and Trusted CA used by the IP phone.

The following types of certificates can be used to authenticate the connections described in the above scenarios:

- **Factory-set Certificates** (see Section 29.1):  
Certificates that are loaded to the AudioCodes IP Phone using an AudioCodes certificate and AudioCodes Trusted Root CA.
- **User-Generated Certificates** (see Section 29.2):  
Certificates that are generated by the user that may use the AudioCodes Trusted Root CA or an external CA.

### 29.1 Factory-Set Certificates and AudioCodes Trusted Root CA

Genesys IP phones are loaded with factory-set preinstalled certificate files: private key file, certificate file and a Trusted Root CA file that is signed by AudioCodes.



**Note:**

- The Web interface provides visual indication that factory certificates are installed:
  - ✓ The System Information page displays 'MAC Address' and 'Device Certificate' parameters.
  - ✓ The values for the 'Device Certificate' parameter can be **Installed**, **Self-Signed**, or **Not Installed**.
- The phone's LCD visually indicates that factory certificates are installed.
  - ✓ The Release Information menu (**MENU** button > **Status**) displays the 'Device Certificate' parameter.
  - ✓ The values of the 'Device Certificate' parameter can be **Installed**, **Self-Signed**, or **Not Installed**.

Whenever the IP phone authenticates with a remote server, it can be authenticated using these certificate files. Each IP phone receives a uniquely generated private key certificate file based on its MAC address.

**Note:**

- If the remote server is configured to authenticate the client and AudioCodes factory-set certificates are used for authentication, then the AudioCodes Certificate and AudioCodes Trusted Root CA must be downloaded to the remote server. These files can be downloaded from the AudioCodes Web site. For more information, contact your local AudioCodes sales representative.
- If you use the AudioCodes Redirect server (see Section 10.2.7) to obtain firmware and configuration files, then the factory-set certificates are used to authenticate the connection with this server.

## 29.2 User-Generated Certificates

If an organizational certificate Infrastructure (PKI) is used, you may wish to instead use certificates provided by your security administrator. You can define up to five additional user-generated certificates, which can be configured to secure different types of connections and paired with external Trusted Root CAs (see Section 29.30). The following remote server connection types can be configured with user-generated certificates:

- 802.1x RADIUS server
- SIP TLS server
- HTTP/S Provisioning server

When user-generated certificates are loaded to the device to authenticate a specific connection type, then this certificate is used to secure the connection with the assigned connection type. For example, if you load Certificate A for connecting to an HTTPS Provisioning server, then whenever there is an attempt by the phone to connect to a Provisioning server, then the connection is authenticated using Certificate A.

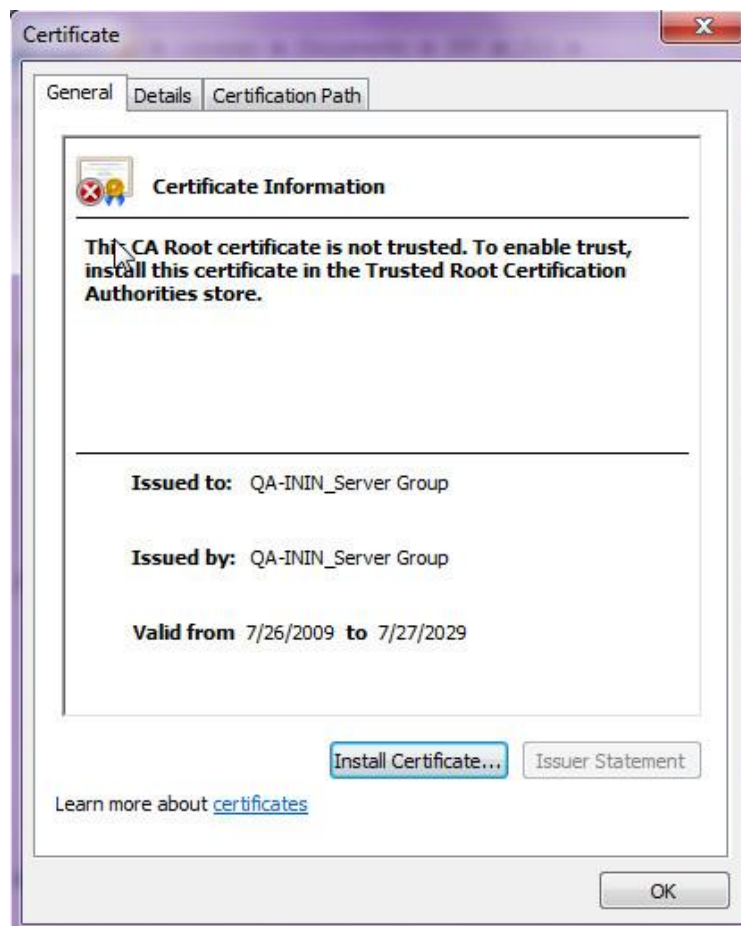
**Note:**

- You can load one certificate for each connection type.
- If you do not load a certificate to support a specific connection type, then the factory-set certificate is used to authenticate the connection. For example if you load user-generated certificates to support Automatic Updates (Provisioning server) and SIP TLS server connections, and there is an attempt by the phone to connect to a RADIUS server, then this connection is authenticated using the AudioCodes factory-set installed certificate.
- You can use the AudioCodes Trusted Root CA with a user-generated certificate.
- You can use the same certificate for different server connection types.

## 29.3 External Trusted Root CAs

The Certificate Authority is a body that certifies ownership of a certificate by the name subject of the certificate.

Figure 29-1: Certificate



You can define up to five external Trusted Root CAs, which may be configured to secure different types of connections and paired with the loaded user-generated certificates (see Section 29.2).



**Note:** If you do not load any Trusted Root CAs to the phone, then when there is an attempt to connect to a remote server or an attempt by a browser to open the Web interface using HTTPS, the AudioCodes Trusted Root CA is used to authenticate the connection.

## 30 Loading a Certificate

This section shows how to:

- Load the Trusted Root CA Certificate to the Phone (see below).
- Load the Client Certificate to the Phone (see Section 30.2).
- Generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) (see Section 30.3).

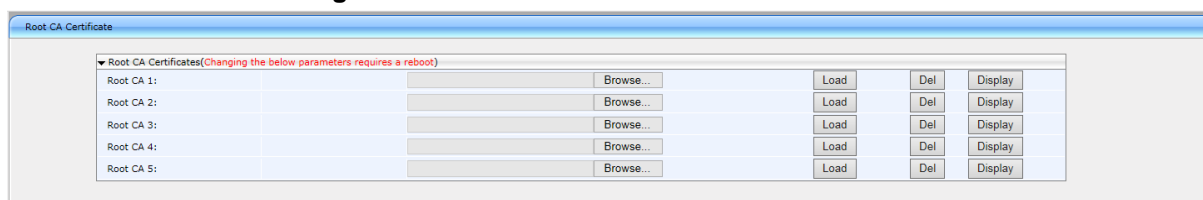
### 30.1 Loading the Trusted Root CA Certificate to the Phone

This section shows how to load the Trusted Root CA certificate to the phone.

➤ **To load the trusted root CA certificate to the phone:**

1. Open the Root CA Certificate page (**Configuration** tab > **Security** menu > **Root CA Certificate**).

**Figure 30-1: Web Interface – Root CA Certificate**



2. Click **Browse** to navigate to the certificate file, and then click the **Load** button to upload it to the phone.

You can load a maximum of five certificates to the phone. Click the **Del** button to delete a load if necessary. Click the **Display** button to display the certificate if you wish to view it.

#### 30.1.1 Loading Trusted Root CA Certificate Using Configuration File

This section shows how to load a Trusted Root CA certificate using the configuration file.



**Note:** Using this method, Trusted Root CA certificates files are loaded to the phone when it is powered up.

➤ **To load a Trusted Root CA certificate file using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 30-1: Root CA Certificate Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Root CA 1 [security/ca_certificate/0/uri=]	The first root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
Root CA 2 [security/ca_certificate/1/uri=]	The second root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
Root CA 3 [security/ca_certificate/2/uri=]	The third root CA certificate loaded to the phone.

Parameter	Description
Root CA 4 [security/ca_certificate/3/uri=]	The fourth root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
Root CA 5 [security/ca_certificate/4/uri=]	The fifth root CA certificate loaded to the phone.

## 30.2 Loading the Client Certificate to the Phone

The section shows how to load the Client Certificate to the phone.

➤ **To load the Client Certificate to the phone:**

1. Open the Client Certificate page (**Configuration** tab > **Security** menu > **Client Certificate**).

**Figure 30-2: Web Interface – Client Certificate**

### 30.2.1 Loading the Client Certificate to the Phone using the Configuration File

This section shows how to load a Client Certificate file to the phone using the configuration file.



**Note:** Using this method, client certificates files are loaded to the phone when it is powered up.

➤ **To load a client certificate file using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 30-2: Client Certificate Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Certificate [security/sip_certificate_uri]	Loads the Client Certificate for SIP TLS (SIP calls with Transport Layer Security) to the phone.
Private Key [security/sip_private_key_uri]	Loads the Client Private Key for SIP TLS (SIP calls with Transport Layer Security) to the phone.
Certificate [security/ieee802_1x_certificate_uri]	Loads the Client Certificate for 802.1X Authentication to the phone.

Parameter	Description
Private Key [security/ieee802_1x_private_key_uri]	Loads the Client Private Key for 802.1X authentication to the phone.
Certificate [security/autoupdate_certificate_uri]	Loads the Client Certificate for Provisioning server authentication to the phone.
Private Key [security/autoupdate_private_key_uri]	Loads the Client Private Key for Provisioning server authentication to the phone.

### 30.2.2 Enabling Server-side Authentication (Mutual Authentication)

You can enable server-side authentication of a connection with the RADIUS and Provisioning server.



**Note:**

- HTTPS provisioning is not supported in the event of server-side authentication.
- OpenSSL 1.0.1m is supported. This open source version supports SHA2 algorithms.

**Table 30-3: Server-side Authentication**

Parameter	Description
Verify Radius remote server certificate. [security/ieee802_1x/verify_server_certificate]	Enables the verification of the server-side certificate in the SSL handshake negotiation with the remote Radius server. Default-1(enabled).
Verify Provisioning server certificate. [security/provisioning/verify_server_certificate]	Enables the verification of the server-side certificate in the SSL negotiation with the remote Provisioning server. Default-0 (disabled).

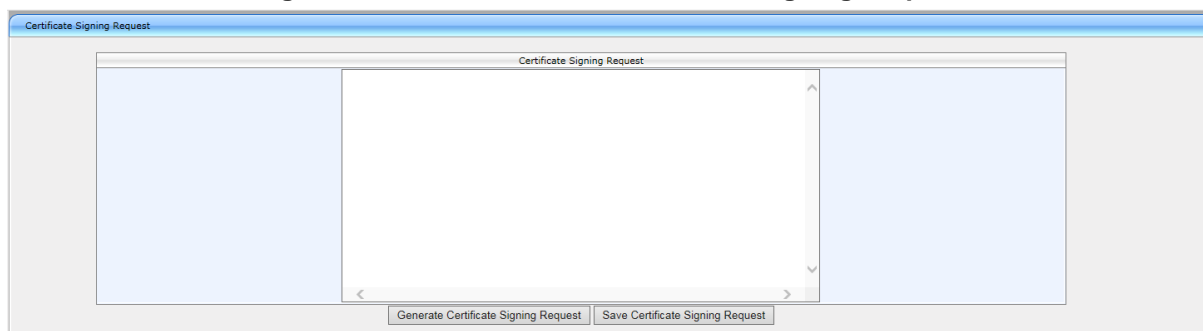
## 30.3 Generating a Certificate Signing Request

The section shows how to generate a certificate signing request (CSR) to send to the Certificate Authority (CA) for the CA to sign the Client Certificate.

➤ **To generate a CSR:**

1. Open the Certificate Signing Request page (**Configuration** tab > **Security** menu > **Certificate Signing Request**).

**Figure 30-3: Web Interface – Certificate Signing Request**



2. Press the **Generate Certificate Signing Request** button; the phone creates a CSR file.
3. Press the **Save Certificate Signing Request** button and download the CSR file to your PC.
4. Send the CSR file to the Certificate Authority to sign the Client Certificate.
5. You can load the Client Certificate to the phone for 802.1X Authentication or SIP TLS.

## 30.4 Using Previously Loaded Certificates

If you have upgraded to this version and your phones have pre-installed certificates, then the CA configuration parameter values from previous versions are translated to version 2.2.2 parameter values as described below.



**Note:** It is **highly recommended** to change the CA configuration by using the methods described in the above sections.

■ Certificate file settings for versions prior to version 2.2.2:

```
security/ca_certificate_uri= xxx
security/certificate_uri=zzz
security/private_key_uri=yyy
```

where:

xxx is the uri of the root CA

zzz is the uri of the certificate file

yyy is the uri of the private key file

■ Certificate file settings translated to version 2.2.2:

```
security/autoupdate_certificate_uri=zzz
security/autoupdate_private_key_uri= yyy
security/ca_certificate/0/uri=xxx
security/ca_certificate/1/uri=
security/ca_certificate/2/uri=
security/ca_certificate/3/uri=
security/ca_certificate/4/uri=
security/ieee802_1x_certificate_uri=zzz
security/ieee802_1x_private_key_uri= yyy
security/sip_certificate_uri= zzz
security/sip_private_key_uri= yyy
```



**Note:** The CA configuration parameters prior to version 2.2.2 are longer used on the IP Phone.

## 31 Configuring SIP TLS

This section shows how to manage Transport Layer Security (TLS) and certificates. TLS is a cryptographic protocol which provides communication security over the transport layer (TCP). TLS is used to secure the IP Phone's SIP signaling connections, Web interface, and Telnet server over TCP/IP. Typically, TLS protocol uses Private and Public keys for authentication. A Certification Authority (CA) performs authentication. Full protocol specification is updated in RFC 5246.



**Note:** Before you can connect to a TLS server, you need to ensure that the same certificate and Trusted Root CA are loaded to both the phone and the TLS server. For more information, see Section 29.

### 31.1 Configuring TLS

This section shows how to configure TLS for the SIP connection between the phone and a TLS server.

➤ **To configure TLS using the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 31-1: SIP-over-TLS Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SIP Transport Protocol [voip/signalling/sip/transport_protocol]	Specifies the SIP Transport protocol. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If using the 'sip' prefix, set to 'TLS'</li><li>• If using the 'sips' prefix, set to 'TCP'</li></ul>
TLS Port [voip/signalling/sip/tls_port]	Defines the local TLS SIP port for SIP messages. Range:1024 - 65535. Default:5061.
/voip/signalling/sip/enable_sips	If signaling protocol is set to TCP and we want to activate TLS, this parameter should be enabled. In this case we will use 'sips' prefix instead of "sip:"

### 31.1.1 Configuring SIP TLS using the Web Interface

This section shows how to configure SIP TLS using the Web interface.



**Note:** This procedure is typically used for evaluation purposes only.

➤ **To configure TLS using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Signaling Protocols page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**) and scroll down to the SIP General screen section.
2. From the 'SIP Transport Protocol' drop-down list, select **TLS**.
3. In the 'TLS Port' field, enter **5061**.
4. Configure the other parameters using [Table 17-1](#) as reference under Section [17.1](#) on page [69](#).

**Figure 31-1: Web Interface – Signaling Protocols - SIP General**

▼ SIP General	
SIP Transport Protocol:	TLS ▼
TLS Port:	5061
SIP Local Port:	5060
Gateway Name:	
PRACK Mode:	Enable ▼
Enable RPORT:	Enable ▼
Include PTIME in SDP:	Disable ▼
Enable Keep Alive using OPTIONS:	Disable ▼
Connect Media on 180 Response:	Disable ▼
Block Caller ID on Outgoing Calls:	Disable ▼
Incoming Anonymous Call Blocking:	Disable ▼

5. Click **Submit**.

## 32 Configuring 802.1x

802.1X is an IEEE Standard for Port-based Network Access Control (PNAC). It's part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism for devices wishing to connect to a LAN or WLAN.

The employee's PC negotiates 802.1X. Messages are sent transparent to the enterprise switch. The IP phone is uninvolved in the negotiation; however, if an employee's PC is disconnected, their IP phone notifies the switch. If an employee's PC is disconnected from the IP phone, a PROXY-EAP-LOGOFF mechanism lets the IP phone immediately log off the port from the authentication server to prevent anyone else from connecting to it.

The phone performs like this:

- IP phone and PC connected to IP phone's PC port successfully perform 802.1X authentication. The authentication server records the IP phone and PC as authorized.
- If the PC is disconnected from IP phone's PC port, the phone sends an EAPoL-Logoff message for the PC. The authentication server then records the PC as unauthorized.
- If the PC reconnects to the IP phone's PC port, the authentication server requests the PC to perform 802.1X authentication again.



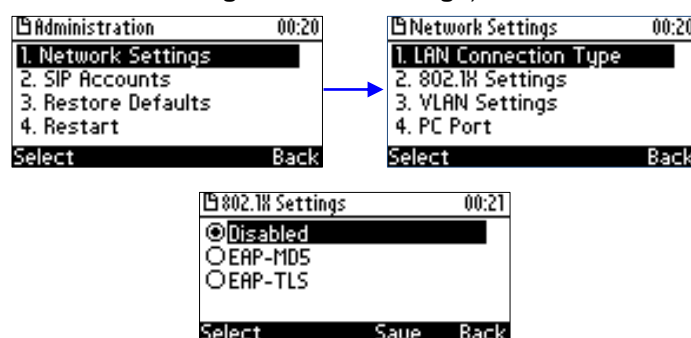
**Note:** Before you can connect to a 802.1x server, you need to ensure that the same certificate and Trusted Root CA are loaded to both the phone and the 802.1x. For more information, see Section 29.

### 32.1 Configuring 802.1x using the Phone's LCD

This section shows how to configure 802.1x using the phone's LCD.

➤ **To configure 802.1x using the phone's LCD:**

1. In the phone's LCD, access the 802.1x Settings screen (**MENU** key > **Administration** menu > **Network Settings** > **802.1xSettings**).



2. Navigate to and select either:
  - Disabled – disables the 802.1x feature
  - EAP-MD5 – see Section 32.1.1
  - EAP-TLS - see Section 32.1.2

### 32.1.1 Configuring EAP-MD5 Mode

This section shows how to configure EAP-MD5 mode for 802.1x using the phone's LCD.

➤ **To configure EAP-MD5 mode for 802.1x using the phone's LCD:**

1. Navigate to the **EAP-MD5** option and then press **Select** and **Edit**:

2. Enter the following information:
  - **Identity:** User ID
  - **Password:** MD5 password (optional)
3. Press the **Save** softkey; a message appears notifying you that the phone will restart.
4. Press **Apply**.

### 32.1.2 Configuring EAP-TLS Mode

This section shows how to configure EAP-TLS mode for 802.1x using the phone's LCD.

➤ **To configure EAP-TLS mode for 802.1x using the phone's LCD:**

1. Navigate to the **EAP-TLS** option and press **Select**
2. Press the **Save** softkey; a message appears notifying you that the phone will restart.
3. Press **Apply**.

## 32.2 Configuring 802.1x Using Web and Configuration File

This section shows how to configure 802.1x using the Web interface or configuration file.

### 32.2.1 Configuring EAP MD5 Mode

This section shows how to configure 802.1x settings for EAP-MD5 using the Web interface.

➤ **To configure 802.1x settings for EAP-MD5 using the Web interface:**

1. Access the 802.1X Settings page (**Configuration > Network Connections > 802.1X Settings**) and select **MD5** as 'EAP Type'.

**Figure 32-1: Web Interface –801.1X Settings - EAP-MD5**

2. Configure the 802.1x settings according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

- To configure 802.1x settings for EAP-MD5 using the configuration file:
- Use the table below as reference.

Table 32-1: EAP MD5 Parameters

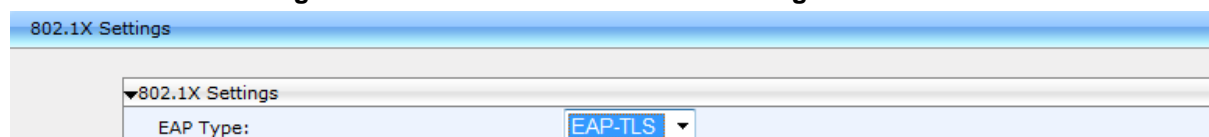
Parameter	Description
EAP Type [/network/lan/_802_1x/eap_type]	Sets 802.1x Extensible Authentication Protocol mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ [Disable] = Disables the use of 802.1x</li><li>▪ [EAP_MD5]=Authentication is implemented by user name and password (Password is optional).</li><li>▪ [EAP_TLS]= Authentication is implemented by Certificate, Client Certificate and Client Private Key.</li></ul>
Identity [/network/lan/_802_1x/md5_identity]	User ID for md5 mode.
MD5 password [/network/lan/_802_1x/md5_password]	Password for md5 mode. (Leave blank if no password).

### 32.2.2 Configuring EAP TLS Mode

This section shows how to configure the phone's 802.1x settings for EAP-TLS using the Web interface or configuration file.

- To configure 802.1x settings for EAP-TLS using the Web interface:
1. Access the 802.1X Settings page (**Configuration > Network Settings > 802.1X Settings**) and select **TLS** as 'EAP Type'.

Figure 32-2: Web Interface –801.1X Settings - EAP-TLS



The screenshot shows the '802.1X Settings' page. A dropdown menu labeled '802.1X Settings' is expanded, showing 'EAP Type:' with a dropdown arrow. The selected option is 'EAP-TLS'.

2. Click **Submit**.

## 33 Configuring SRTP

Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP) is a protocol that allows encryption for RTP data. Since the RTP encryption key is delivered via SIP, this feature is relevant only when SIP transport is secured, so when using this feature you also need to use SIP over TLS (see section 31.131.131.1).

SRTP can be configured using the Web interface or configuration file.

➤ **To configure SRTP using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Media Streaming page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Media Streaming**).

**Figure 33-1: Web Interface - SRTP**

▼SRTP	
Enable SRTP Encryption and Authentication:	Enable ▼
Method:	AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_32 ▼
ARIA:	Disable ▼

2. Configure the SRTP settings according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure SRTP using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 33-1: SRTP Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Enable SRTP Encryption and Authentication [voip/media/srtp/enabled]	Enables secured RTP (SRTP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Method [voip/media/srtp/method]	The SRTP encryption method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_32] (default)</li> <li>▪ [AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_80]</li> <li>▪ [AES_CM_128_ALL_METHODS]</li> </ul>
/voip/media/srtp/use_MKI	Defines the Master Key Index from SDP.
/voip/media/srtp/MKI_length	Defines the maximum length of the Master Key Index. Range: 1 - 4. Default: 1.

## 34 Configuring HTTP/S

HTTP/S login authentication can be configured to secure the connection between the IP phones and a provisioning server, such as the BroadWorks Device Management Provisioning server. Once the connection is secure, software and/or configuration files can be downloaded to the phone.

HTTP/S authentication is supporting using the following methods (configured on the remote server):

- **Basic** – (RFC 2617) username and password are sent in plain text over plain HTTP over the network.
- **Digest** – a hash function is applied to the password before sending it over the network, therefore it is more secure as usernames and passwords are encrypted



**Note:**

- The enterprise requires an HTTP/S server to support this feature.
- The authentication method is configured on the remote side e.g. Provisioning server.

## 35 Logging into a Remote HTTP/S Server using the Phone LCD

During automatic provisioning, the phone can optionally prompt the user to enter the login credentials (username and password) of the provisioning server.

The prompt occurs during the server's authentication process, when it is recognized that an HTTP username and/or password has not been specified, or that these credentials are incorrect.

If so, and if the prompt feature is enabled, the 'Prov. Credentials' screen pops up, prompting the user to enter or reenter these login credentials.

➤ **To configure HTTP/S login authentication in the Configuration File:**

- Use the table below as reference:

**Table 35-1: HTTP/S Login Authentication**

Parameter	Description
[provisioning/configuration/http_auth/ui_interaction_enabled]	<p>Enables the user to be prompted to enter the HTTP username and password on the phone during the automatic provisioning process whenever the login credentials to the provisioning server have not been entered or are incorrect.</p> <p><b>[0]</b> = (default) The phone's Settings menu's <b>Prov. Credentials</b> option is not available on the phone and therefore the user cannot interactively enter the HTTP password and username. In this case, you must enter values for the HTTP username and password in the configuration file, as specified below.</p> <p><b>[1]</b> = The user can be prompted to enter the HTTP username and password interactively. Whenever this value is configured and the phone attempts to connect to a remote server, then the user is prompted to enter or reenter these credentials.</p> <p>In addition, the user can manually go the Settings menu option <b>Prov. Credentials</b> to enter their username and password.</p> <p>When this value is enabled, then it is <i>highly recommended</i> to remove the HTTP password and username entries from the configuration file:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ provisioning/configuration/http_auth/password</li><li>▪ [provisioning/configuration/http_auth/user_name]</li></ul>
[provisioning/configuration/http_auth/user_name]	Defines a username required by the HTTP/S server for logging in with authentication.
[provisioning/configuration/http_auth/password]	Defines a password required by the HTTP/S server for logging in with authentication.

## 36 Securing the Web Interface using HTTP/S

This section shows how to secure management of the phone with HTTP/S authentication, using the Web interface.



**Note:** If you wish to authenticate the connection between the phone and a remote HTTP/S browser, you need to ensure that the same certificate and Trusted Root CA are loaded to both the phone and the remote HTTP/S browser. For more information, see Section 29.

- **To secure management of the phone with HTTP/S authentication, using the Web interface:**
1. In your Web browser, enter the URL, for example, `https://10.13.2.5`; the following screen opens:

**Figure 36-1: Securing Web Interface Management with HTTP/S**



2. Click the **Continue to this website** link; the Windows Security dialog opens.



3. Enter your 'User Name' and 'Password' (Default = **admin** and 1234); the home page of phone's Web interface opens. You're now managing the phone using the Web interface, secured by HTTP/S.

## 36.1 Provisioning

Your IP phones are automatically provisioned by your enterprise's DHCP server when you initially connect them to the IP network and to the power supply.

You can then configure *periodic* automatic provisioning by DHCP server, in the Web interface.

➤ **To configure periodic automatic provisioning by DHCP server:**

1. In the Web interface, access the Automatic Provisioning screen (**Management** tab > **Automatic Update** > **Automatic Provisioning**).

**Figure 36-2: Web Interface – Automatic Provisioning**

Automatic Provisioning	
Firmware Version :	2.0.2.15
Provisioning Method :	DHCP Options (Dynamic URL) ▼
Dynamic Firmware URL :	tftp://10.1.1.56/\Boot\x86\wdsnbp.com/420HD.img
Dynamic Configuration URL :	tftp://10.1.1.56/00908f3bbaf5.cfg
DHCP Option Value :	160
Check Period :	Daily ▼
Every day at :	00:00 ▼
Random Provisioning Time :	120 minutes

2. Configure the firmware file (img) and configuration file (cfg) to be pulled from your enterprise's HTTP server by the DHCP server, in the 'Dynamic Firmware URL' parameter and 'Dynamic Configuration URL' parameter.
3. Configure the provisioning period.



**Note:** To implement secure provisioning using HTTP/S, the HTTP/S server on the far end (from where you are loading the files) must also support HTTP/S.

## 37 MAC-Based Authentication

This section shows how to configure MAC-based authentication.

➤ **To configure MAC-based authentication:**

- Use the table below as reference:

**Table 37-1: Authentication**

Parameter	Description
[provisioning/configuration/mac_address_in_header]	<p>Enables MAC-based authentication.</p> <p><b>[0]</b> = (default) Don't insert the IP phone's MAC address in the header.</p> <p><b>[1]</b> = Insert the IP phone's MAC address in the header.</p>



# **Part VIII**

## **Maintenance**

## 38 Changing Administrator Login Credentials

You can change the administrator phone's login user name and password. This is the login required to access the Web interface and the phone LCD's **Administration** menu. The default administrator user name and password is **admin** and **1234** respectively.

Administrator Login Credentials can be changed using the Web interface or Configuration File.

- **To change the administrator's login username and password using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Users page (**Management** tab > **Administration** menu > **Users**).

**Figure 38-1: Web Interface – Users – Administrator Account**

Username	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="••••"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password" value="••••"/>

2. In the 'Username' field, enter a username.
3. In the 'Password' field, enter a new password, and then in the 'Confirm Password' field, re-enter this new password.
4. Click **Submit**; a confirmation prompt appears.
5. Click **OK**.

- **To change the login username and password using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 38-1: Username and Password Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Username [system/user_name]	The phone user name. The default value is admin. <b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable only to the Web interface.
Password [system/password]	The phone password is by default encrypted. The default value is 1234. To regenerate an encrypted password, see Section 4.6.2. <b>Note:</b> This parameter applies to the Web interface, and to the LCD display.

## 39 Restarting Phones

The phone can be restarted from the phone's LCD or using the Web interface.

### 39.1 Restarting from the Phone's LCD

This section shows how to restart the phone from the phone's LCD.

➤ **To restart the phone from the LCD:**

1. In the phone's LCD select the **Restart** option. Either:
  - a. **MENU** key > **Administration** menu > **Restart**) -OR-
  - b. **MENU** key > **Settings** menu > **Restart**

The screenshot below shows the Administration menu's **Restart** option.



A warning message appears requesting you to confirm:



2. Press the **Yes** softkey to confirm the restart or **No** to cancel.

## 39.2 Restarting the Phone using the Web Interface

You can use the Web interface to restart your phone.

➤ **To restart the phone:**

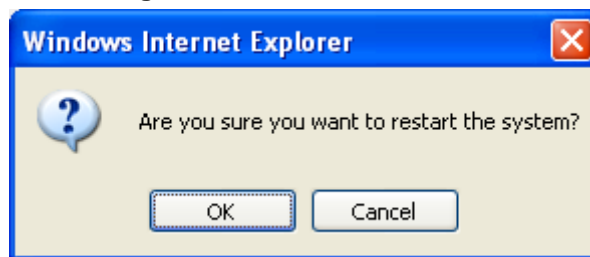
1. In the Web interface access the Restart System page (**Management** tab > **Administration** menu > **Restart System**).

**Figure 39-1: Web Interface –Restart System**



2. Click the **Restart** button; a confirmation box appears prompting you to confirm.

**Figure 39-2: Confirmation Box**



3. Click **OK**.

## 40 Restoring Phone Defaults

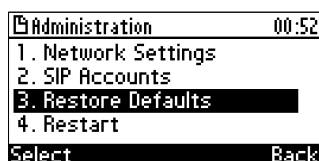
Phone default settings can be restored from the phone's LCD or using the Web interface.

### 40.1 Restoring Factory Defaults from the Phone's LCD

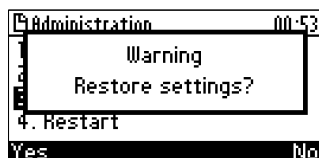
This section shows how to restore factory defaults from the phone's LCD.

➤ **To restore the phone to default settings:**

1. In the phone's LCD, access the **Restore Defaults** submenu (**MENU** key > **Administration** menu > **Restore Defaults**).



2. Press the **Select** softkey; a warning message appears requesting you to confirm:



3. Press the **Yes** softkey to confirm reset to defaults or **No** to cancel.



**Note:** You can restore the phone's settings to their defaults without needing access to the 'Administration' menu or (2) administrator access to the Web interface.

To restore the phone's settings to their defaults if necessary:

1. Long-press the **OK** and **MENU** keys simultaneously and while pressed, unplug the power cable.
2. Plug the power cable back into the phone and continue to press the OK + MENU keys for +-5 seconds as the boot process starts after connecting the power supply.
3. Release the **OK + MENU** keys; the phone's settings are restored to their defaults.

## 40.2 Restoring Factory Defaults using the Web Interface

You can restore your phone's settings to factory defaults using the Web interface.

➤ **To restore the phone to factory defaults:**

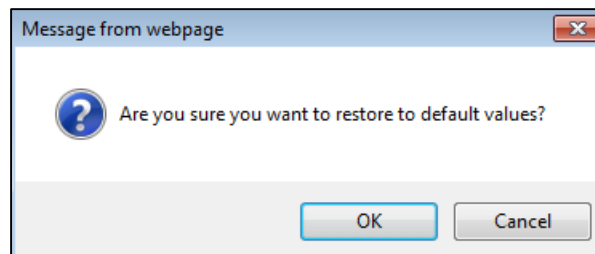
1. Access the Restore Defaults page (**Management** tab > **Administration** menu > **Restore Defaults**).

**Figure 40-1: Web Interface –Restore Defaults**

A screenshot of a web interface form. It consists of a light blue rectangular box. Inside the box, on the left, is the text "Restore to Factory Defaults". On the right side of the box is a button labeled "Submit".

2. Click the **Submit** button; a confirmation box appears prompting you to confirm.

**Figure 40-2: Submit Confirmation Box**



3. Click **OK**.



# Part IX

## Status and Monitoring

## 41 Determining Network Status

This section shows how to determine network status using the Web interface.

### 41.1 Determining LAN Status

This section shows how to determine LAN status information.

- **To determine LAN status information:**
  - Access the Network Status page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Status** menu > **Network Status**).

**Figure 41-1: Web Interface - LAN Information**

LAN Information	
Type:	DHCP Client
IP Address:	10.16.2.162
Subnet Mask:	255.255.0.0
Default Gateway Address:	10.16.0.1
Primary DNS:	10.1.1.11
Secondary DNS:	10.1.1.10
MAC Address:	00:90:8F:1E:DB:3E

### 41.2 Determining Port Status

This section shows how to determine Port Mode status using the Web interface.

- **To determine Port Mode status:**
  - Access the Network Status page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Status** menu > **Network Status**).

**Figure 41-2: Web Interface – Port Mode Status**

Port Mode Status		
Attribute	LAN Port	PC Port
Link State:	Up	Down
Negotiation:	Automatic	Automatic
Speed:	100Mbps	N/A
Duplex:	Full	N/A
VLAN Activate:	Enable	Disable
VLAN Id:	0	N/A
VLAN Priority:	0	N/A

### 41.3 Determining 802.1x Status

This section shows how to determine 802.1x status.

- **To determine 802.1x status:**
  - Access the Network Status page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Status** menu > **Network Status**).

**Figure 41-3: Web Interface - 802.1X Status**

802.1X Status	
EAP Type:	EAP-TLS
Status:	Failure: No certificates

## 42 Determining VoIP Status

This section shows how to determine VoIP status using the Web interface.

### 42.1 Determining Phone Status

This section shows how to determine phone status.

➤ **To determine phone status:**

- Access the VoIP Status page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Status** menu > **VoIP Status**).

**Figure 42-1: Web Interface - VoIP Status - Phone Status**

Phone Status	
Hook State	On Hook
Audio Device	Ringer

### 42.2 Determining Line Status

This section shows how to determine line status.

➤ **To determine line status:**

- Access the Network Status page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Status** menu > **VoIP Status**).

**Figure 42-2: Web Interface – Line Status**

Line Status	
Line Number	Line 1
SIP Registration	Registered
SIP Registration Server	10.37.4.204
DnD	Off
Mute	Off
Forward State	Disabled
Forward Destination	N/A

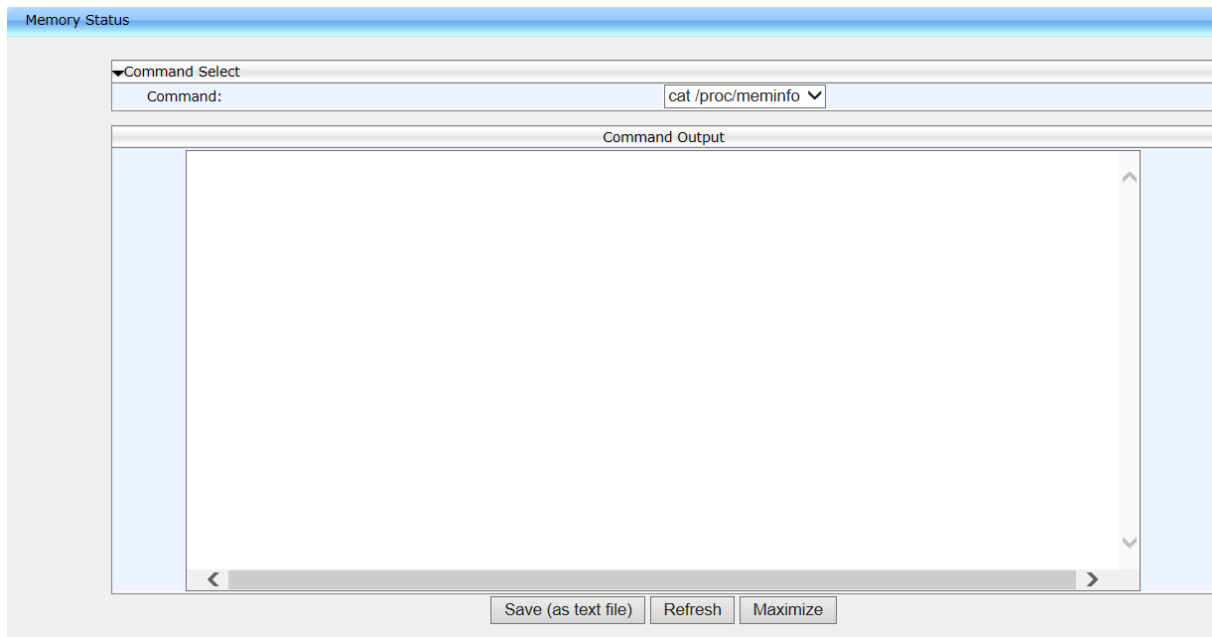
## 42.3 Determining Memory Status

This section shows how to determine the device's memory status in real time, using the three Linux commands that are most frequently used to obtain data related to a device's memory state.

➤ **To determine memory status:**

1. Access the Memory Status page (Status & Diagnostics > System Status > Memory Status).

**Figure 42-3: Web Interface – Memory Status**



2. From the dropdown list select a Linux command from the three available:

- **meminfo**
- **ps**
- **top**

Use [Table 42-1](#) below as reference.

**Table 42-1: Memory Status – Linux Commands**

Linux Command	Description
<b>Meminfo</b>	Provides you a snapshot of memory usage on the device.
<b>ps</b>	Provides you a snapshot of the current processes running on the device's CPU.
<b>top</b>	Provides you an ongoing look at processor activity in real time. Displays a listing of the most CPU-intensive tasks on the system.

3. Click **Refresh**; the information requested is displayed.

**Figure 42-4: Web Interface – Memory Status – Linux meminfo Command – Displayed Information**

▼Command Select

Command:  ▼

Command Output

```

MemTotal:      13576 kB
MemFree:       124 kB
Buffers:       0 kB
Cached:       3180 kB
SwapCached:    0 kB
Active:       9168 kB
Inactive:     848 kB
HighTotal:     0 kB
HighFree:     0 kB
LowTotal:     13576 kB
LowFree:      124 kB
SwapTotal:     0 kB
SwapFree:     0 kB
Dirty:        0 kB
Writeback:    0 kB
Mapped:       9020 kB
Slab:        2208 kB
CommitLimit:  6788 kB
Committed_AS: 12324 kB
PageTables:   296 kB
VmallocTotal: 1048560 kB
  
```

4. Click **Save (as text file)** (optional); the information provided by the Linux command is saved to a txt file. You can use the file to make sure all data is stored correctly in memory and to diagnose possible issues such as voice quality, jitter, or memory leakage.
5. Click **Maximize** (optional); the information pane is maximized for an optimal viewing experience.

## 42.4 Viewing Current Call Information

The Web interface displays call information of a currently established call.

- **To view current call information:**
  - Access the Network Status page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Status** menu > **VoIP Status**):

**Figure 42-5: Web Interface –Line 1 Call Information**

Line 1 Call Information	
Call Number	Call 1
Call State	Connected
Origin	Outgoing
Remote Number	569
Remote ID	Sue Lee
Duration	00:00:22
Codec	G722
Packets Sent	825
Packets Received	826
Bytes Sent	132000
Bytes Received	132160
Packets Lost	0
Fraction Lost	0.0%
Jitter	1
Round Trip Delay	22

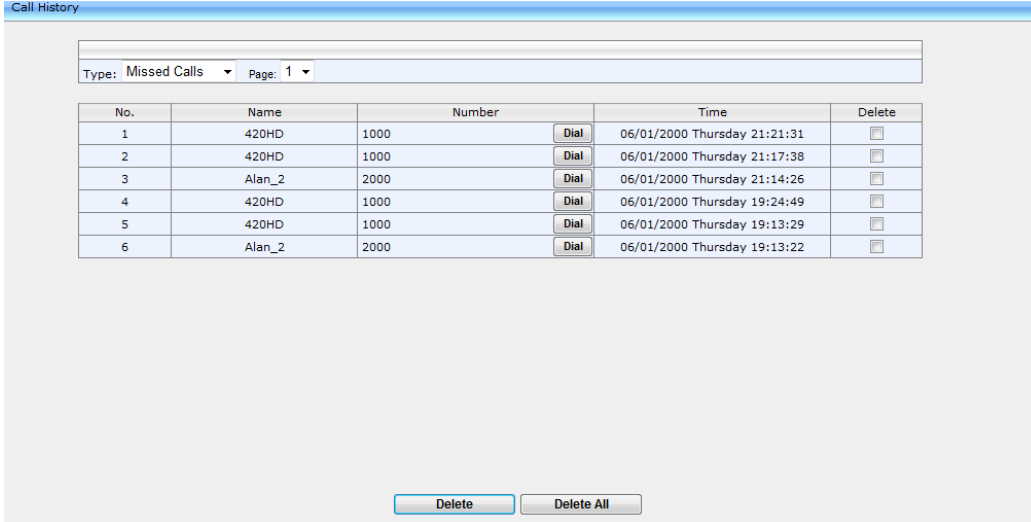
## 43 Viewing Call History

You can view a list of received calls, missed calls, and dialed numbers. The call duration of the received and dialed calls is also displayed.

➤ **To view call history:**

1. Access the Call History page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **History** menu > **Call History**).

**Figure 43-1: Web Interface – Call History**



No.	Name	Number	Time	Delete
1	420HD	1000	06/01/2000 Thursday 21:21:31	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	420HD	1000	06/01/2000 Thursday 21:17:38	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Alan_2	2000	06/01/2000 Thursday 21:14:26	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	420HD	1000	06/01/2000 Thursday 19:24:49	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	420HD	1000	06/01/2000 Thursday 19:13:29	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	Alan_2	2000	06/01/2000 Thursday 19:13:22	<input type="checkbox"/>

Buttons: **Delete** **Delete All**

2. From the 'Type' drop-down list, select the type of call history (i.e., missed calls, received calls, and dialed numbers) that you want to view; the table lists the call history according to the chosen call history type.
3. You can delete a logged call history entry, by selecting the 'Delete' check box corresponding to the entry that you want to delete, and then clicking the **Delete** button.

## 44 Accessing System Information

### 44.1 Accessing Phone Firmware Version

You can determine the phone firmware version using the Web interface or from the phone LCD.

#### 44.1.1 Accessing Firmware Version using the Web Interface

You can determine the firmware version currently running on the phone.

- **To view the phone's firmware version:**
  - Access the System Information page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Information** menu > **General**).

**Figure 44-1: Web Interface - System Information–Firmware Version**

System Information	
Model Name	430HD
Firmware Version	2.2.4.46
Release Date	2015-07-07_11:37:30
MAC Address	00:90:8F:48:4C:F0
Device Certificate	Self-Signed

#### 44.1.2 Accessing Firmware Version from the Phone's LCD

This section shows how to determine firmware version in the phone's LCD.

- **To determine the phone's firmware version from the LCD:**
  - In the phone's LCD, access the Firmware Version screen (**MENU** key > **Status** menu > **Firmware Version**):



## 44.2 Viewing Phone Firmware Release Information

You can view phone firmware release information in the Web interface or in the phone LCD.

### 44.2.1 Viewing Firmware Release Information in the Web Interface

- To view firmware release information in the Web interface:
- Access the Release Information page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **System Information** menu > **Release Information**).

**Figure 44-2: Web Interface - System Information – Release Information**

Release Information	
BLVERSION	1.0.24
AUTOMAKE	1
BUILD_OWNER	compile@cmbusrv01
BUILD_PROFILE	405
IMG_BLVERSION	1.0.24
SYSDATETIME	112400002015
VCS	g
BUILD_TIME	2015-11-24_11:53:09
DSPFWVERSION	494002ce4.700.28/494001ce5.700.28
HW_TYPE	405
LOG	0
SWVERSION	2.2.6.9
SW_TYPE	GENERIC
DSP_FW_VERSION_CURRENTLY_LOADED	494002ce4.700.28



**Note:**

- The 'DSP\_FW\_VERSION\_CURENTLY\_LOADED' field displays the firmware version currently loaded on the phone, that is, ce4 or ce5, which changes dynamically depending on the codec used in the last call made. If no call was made, the firmware depends on the first codec selected in the configuration file.
- The 'DSPFWVERSION' field, by contrast, includes all firmware images supported.
- Firmware versions ce4 and ce5 are both included in the image (img) file, allowing users to use all codecs. The phone sends a list of all the codecs in the INVITE message and the remote side can choose any of them. If OPUS is chosen, the ce5 firmware version will be loaded (on the fly). If any other codec is chosen by the remote side, ce4 will be loaded (on the fly).

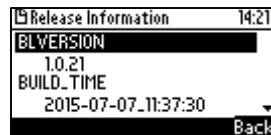
## 44.2.2 Viewing Firmware Release Information in the Phone's LCD

This section shows how to view firmware release information in the phone's LCD.

➤ **To view firmware release information in the phone's LCD:**

- In the phone's LCD, access the Release Information screen (**MENU** key > **Status** menu > **Release Information**).

This screen is displayed:



- Release information includes:

- BL Version
- Build Time
- DSP FW Version
- Hardware Type
- Log
- Software Version
- Software Type

# 45 Monitoring Quality of Experience

You can configure the phone to send Quality of Experience reports to a QoE collecting server, such as the AudioCodes SEM server. This mechanism is implemented using RTCP-XR (RTCP Extended Reports). These extended reports include voice quality data events, such as Jitter Buffer, Packet Loss, Delay and Burst, which are collected by the IP phone during the VoIP session.

When the SIP PUBLISH feature is enabled, upon the termination of the VoIP session e.g. call disconnect or Hold states, values are calculated for each voice quality data event and sent to the QoE server in a SIP PUBLISH message.

RTCP XR information publishing is implemented on the IP Phone according to RFC 6035.

RTP Control Protocol Extended Reports (RTCP XR) is a VoIP management control that defines a set of metrics containing information for assessing VoIP call quality and for diagnosing problems. RTCP XR (RFC 3611) extends the RTCP reports defined in RFC 3550 by providing additional VoIP metrics for Quality of Experience.

## 45.1 Configuring Remote Voice Quality Monitoring

In order to report voice quality events from the phone to a Quality of Experience Server (QoE), you must perform both of the following actions:

- Configure the phone to retrieve RTCP XP events on voice quality data (see Section 45.1.1).
- Configure the phone to send SIP PUBLISH messages to the QoE server, including the RTCP XP events described above and the SIP call messages (see Section 45.1.245.1.2).

## 45.1.1 Configuring RTCP Extended Report

This section shows how to configure RTCP-XR (Extended Report for RTP Control Protocol) working mode. You must enable the phone to retrieve RTCP-XR events using one of the methods described in the table below (this feature is by default disabled).

➤ **To configure RTCP\_XR working mode using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Media Streaming page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Media Streaming**), and then scroll down to the RTCP-XR section.

**Figure 45-1: Web Interface - Media Streaming - RTCP-XR**

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring RTCP-XR. At the top, there is a tab labeled 'RTCP-XR'. Below it, there is a label 'RTCP-XR Voice Quality Statistics Mode:' followed by a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is currently set to 'Disable'.

2. Configure the 'RTCP-XR Voice Quality Statistics Mode' parameter, using the following table below as reference.

➤ **To configure RTCP\_XR working mode using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 45-1: RTCP\_XR Parameters**

Parameter	Description
RTCP-XR Voice Quality Statistics Mode [voip/rtcp_xr/vq_statistics/mode]	<p>Sets RTCP_XR working mode. Select either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[DISABLE]</b> (default). In this state, no RTCP events are retrieved from the phone and the SIP PUBLISH is not sent, regardless of the state of parameter 'qoe_publish_enabled' (see below).</li> <li>▪ <b>[EVENTS_ONLY]</b>. In this state, RTCP-XR events with voice quality parameter calculations are sent internally on the phone every five seconds. Each calculation is made on the basis of these RFC 3611 parameters: BT=7, block length = 8SSRC of source, loss rate, discard rate, burst density, gap density, burst duration, gap duration, round trip delay, end system delay, signal level, noise level, Gmin, R factor, ext. R factor, MOS-LQ, MOS-CQ, RX config, JB nominal, JB maximum and JB abs max. In addition, when the SIP PUBLISH is enabled (see Section 45.1.2), at the end of the VoIP session, the summarized RTCP-XR events are sent to the configured QoE server in a SIP PUBLISH message.</li> <li>▪ <b>[REMOTE_AND_EVENTS]</b>. In this state, the phone sends RTCP-XR events to the remote calling party (i.e. party A sends these events to party B) every five seconds during the VoIP session. In addition, when the SIP PUBLISH is enabled (see Section 45.1.2) at the end of the VoIP session, the summarized RTCP-XR events are sent to the configured QoE server in a SIP PUBLISH message.</li> </ul>

### 45.1.2 Configuring Voice Quality Monitoring

You can set up the phone to report SIP PUBLISH messages to a remote QoE server.

➤ **To configure voice quality monitoring using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 45-2: Voice Quality Monitoring Parameters**

Name	Role
<b>[/voip/qoe/qoe_publish_enabled]</b>	Determines whether or not to send PUBLISH messages (Default-0).
<b>[/voip/qoe/qoe_server_address]</b>	Sets the QoE server address/hostname to which PUBLISH messages will be sent (Default-0.0.0.0).
<b>[/voip/qoe/qoe_server_port]</b>	Sets the port to which the PUBLISH messages will be sent (Default-5960).

For a full listing of RTCP XR parameters that may be sent to the QoE server, see Appendix [G](#).  
For example SIP PUBLISH messages, see Appendix [H](#).



# Part X

## Diagnostics and Troubleshooting

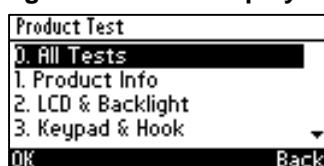
## 46 Diagnosing Phone Hardware

This section shows how to test the IP Phone's hardware functionality.

➤ **To diagnose phone hardware:**

1. Connect the phone's LAN port to a switch using a LAN cable.
2. Ensure that the DHCP server is functioning.
3. Connect a headset to the phone.
4. Power on the phone and wait until initialization is complete.
5. On the keypad, key in the number **0123456789** and then press the star key (\*); the diagnostic tests are displayed in the phone's LCD:

**Figure 46-1: Diagnostic Tests Displayed in Phone LCD**



6. Run all tests consecutively (LCD menu option 0 – All Tests) -OR- run a single test (LCD menu options 1-10):

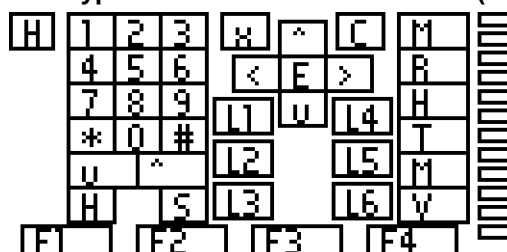
LCD Menu Option	Test	Description
<b>0</b>	All Tests	1-10 (listed below), performed in one continuous sequence, where each test is followed by the next in the order listed.
<b>1</b>	Product Info	Displays MAC address, SN (serial number), VERSION, IP address, manufacturing company (AudioCodes) and phone model. Verify that product information is correct.
<b>2</b>	Main LCD & Backlight	Tests the backlight in the main LCD. Press <b>OK</b> successively to test correct functionality.
<b>4</b>	Keypad and Hook	Tests off-hook/on-hook functionality. Verify correct functionality. For more details, see Section 46.1.
<b>5</b>	LED	Tests the LEDs. Press <b>OK</b> successively; LCD displays 'Green LEDs are on' followed by 'Red LEDs are on' followed by 'Blue LEDs are on' followed by 'All LEDs are on'. Verify correct functionality.
<b>6</b>	Handset	Tests handset microphone for recording/speaking and handset receiver (speaker) for playing/listening. Verify correct functionality. For more details, see Section 46.2.
<b>7</b>	Headset	Tests headset microphone (recording/speaking) and headset headphone/receiver (playing/listening). Verify correct functionality. For more details, see Section 46.3 below.
<b>8</b>	Hands Free	Tests speaker microphone (recording/speaking) and speaker receiver (playing/listening). Verify correct functionality. For more details, see Section 46.4 below.
<b>9</b>	AUX	Used for debugging.

## 46.1 Testing Keypad and Hook

➤ **To test keypad and hook:**

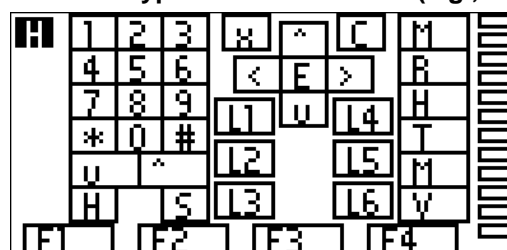
1. From the LCD, select menu option 4, **Keypad and Hook**; the phone's LCD displays a graphic representation of the physical keypad (LCD screens differ slightly across models).

**Figure 46-2: Keypad and Hook Test– On-Hook (e.g., 420HD)**



2. Off-hook the handset; the background of the hook indicator ('H') turns black.

**Figure 46-3: Keypad Test – Off-Hook (e.g., 420HD)**



3. On-hook the handset; the background of the hook indicator ('H') reverts to white.
4. Press each key on the keypad; its representation in the LCD turns black.

## 46.2 Testing Handset

➤ **To test the handset:**

1. From the LCD, select menu option 6, **Handset**; the LCD indicates 'Off-hook phone'.
2. Off-hook the phone; the LCD indicates 'Start recording...' Speak into the handset until the LCD displays 'Start playing...' and you hear your speech playing back.

## 46.3 Testing the Headset

➤ **To test the headset:**

1. From the LCD, select menu option 7, **Headset**; the LCD indicates 'Press any key'.
2. Press any key; the LCD indicates 'Start recording...' Speak into the headset until the LCD displays 'Start playing...' and you hear your speech playing back.

## 46.4 Testing Hands Free

➤ **To test hands free:**

1. From the LCD, select menu option 7, **Hands Free**; the LCD indicates 'Press any key'.
2. Press any key; the LCD indicates 'Start recording...' Speak into the phone speaker for a few seconds until the LCD displays 'Start playing...' and you hear your speech playing back through the speaker.

## 47 Recovering Firmware

This section shows how to recover the phone's firmware. If the phone is powered off for some reason during the firmware upgrade process, the phone becomes unusable. The recovery process is also available when the phone is connected to a VLAN.

➤ **To recover the phone firmware:**

1. Ensure that your DHCP server supports Options 66 (TFTP server address) and 67 (firmware file), and that these are configurable.
2. Before connecting the phone, verify that the TFTP server is running and the firmware file for recovery is located in the correct location.
3. Connect your phone to the IP network, and then connect the phone to the power outlet;
  - a. The phone sends a TFTP request to the IP address indicated in the DHCP Option 66 field to retrieve the firmware file indicated in the DHCP Option 67 field.
  - b. The phone, in the DHCP Discover message sends its model name in the DHCP Option 77 field. The DHCP server, according to the phone model, sets the appropriate firmware file name in the DHCP Option 67 field sent to the phone (e.g., 420HD\_2.2.2.img).
  - c. The phone then upgrades to the recovery firmware.
  - d. After the firmware upgrade process completes, the phone boots up successfully.

## 48 Configuring System Logging (Syslog)

System logging (Syslog) can be configured using the Web interface or configuration file.

➤ **To configure system logging using the Web interface:**

1. Access the System logging page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **Diagnostics** menu > **Logging**).

**Figure 48-1: Web Interface –System Logging**

▼System Logging	
Activate:	<b>Both</b> ▼
Server IP Address or Host Name:	0.0.0.0
Server Port:	514
Voip Application:	None ▼
Sip Call Control:	None ▼
Sip Stack:	None ▼
Control Center:	None ▼
LCD Display:	None ▼
Web:	None ▼
Watchdog:	None ▼
802.1X:	None ▼
Kernel:	None ▼
DSP:	None ▼

2. Configure system logging according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure system logging using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 48-1: Syslog Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Activate [system/watchdog/enabled]	<p>Enables the system watchdog. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disable</b> = No Syslog.</li> <li>• <b>Network</b> = Syslog is sent to the Syslog server. (Recommended).</li> <li>• <b>Console</b> = Syslog is sent to the phone console. (You need to connect a serial cable to view the logs. This causes delays in phone operation).</li> <li>• <b>Both</b> = Syslog sends to the Syslog server AND the console.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> It is recommended to leave this parameter at its default value.</p>
Server IP Address or Host Name [system/syslog/server_address]	<p>The IP address (in dotted-decimal notation) of the computer you are using to run the Syslog server (e.g., Wireshark). The Syslog server is an application designed to collect the logs and error messages generated by the phone. The default IP address is 0.0.0.0. <b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable when Activate is set to <b>Network</b> or <b>Both</b>.</p>

Parameter	Description
Server Port [system/syslog/server_port]	Defines the UDP port of the Syslog server. The valid range is 0 to 65,535. The default port is 514. <b>Note:</b> This parameter is applicable when Activate is set to <b>Network</b> or <b>Both</b> .
<b>Note:</b> The following Severity level options are applicable for the fields below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Emergency</li> <li>• Error</li> <li>• Warning</li> <li>• Notice</li> <li>• Info</li> <li>• Debug</li> </ul>	
<b>VoIP Application</b>	Defines multi-layer VoIP application.
<b>SIP Call Control</b>	Defines MTR layer Radvision.
<b>SIP Stack</b>	Defines SIP Stack Radvision.
<b>Control Center</b>	Responsible for Networking and running other processes.
<b>LCD Display</b>	Defines LCD Display.
<b>Web</b>	Defines the phone Web server.
<b>Watchdog</b>	Responsible for keeping other processes running.
<b>802.1X</b>	Defines the security protocol.

## 49 Viewing Error Messages Displayed in Phone LCD

The table below shows the error messages that may be viewed in the phone's LCD.

**Table 49-1: Error Messages Displayed in Phone LCD**

Message	Description
LAN Link failure	The LAN link is disconnected.
Registration failure	Received error or no response from the SIP proxy



**Note:**

- With both errors, the 'ringer' LED remains red until the error is fixed.
- While the error message is displayed, the user can't dial or initiate a call.

## 50 Debugging using Packet Recording Parameters

Packet recording parameters allow you to debug voice activity on the phone, using the Web interface or configuration file.

➤ **To debug using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Recording page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **Diagnostics** menu > **Recording**).

**Figure 50-1: Web Interface – Recording**

Recording	
Remote IP Address or Host Name:	0.0.0.0
Remote Port:	50000
Enable DSP Recording:	Disable ▾
Enable EC Debug Recording:	Disable ▾
Enable Noise Reduction Debug Recording:	Disable ▾
Enable Network Recording:	Disable ▾
Enable TDM Recording:	Disable ▾

2. Configure the packet recording parameters using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To debug using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 50-1: Recording Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Remote IP Address or Host Name [voip/packet_recording/remote_ip]	The IP address (in dotted-decimal notation) of the remote computer to which the recorded packets are sent. The recorded packets should be captured by a network sniffer (such as Wireshark). The default value is 0.0.0.0.
Remote Port [voip/packet_recording/remote_port]	Defines the UDP port of the remote computer to which the recorded packets are sent. The valid range is 1024 to 65535. The default value is 50000.
Enable DSP Recording [voip/packet_recording/enabled]	Activates the packet recording mechanism. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Enable RTP Recording <b>[voip/packet_recording/rtp_recording/enabled]</b>	Only displayed if the parameter 'Enable DSP Recording' is enabled. Activates the DSP RTP recording. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Enable EC Debug Recording <b>[voip/packet_recording/ec_debug_recording/enabled]</b>	Activates the Echo Cancellor Debug recording. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Enable Noise Reduction Debug Recording	Traffic on the network stops when the MUTE key is activated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Enable Network Recording <b>[voip/packet_recording/network_recording/enabled]</b>	Activates the DSP network (TDM Out) recording. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Enable TDM Recording <b>[voip/packet_recording/tdm_recording/enabled]</b>	Activates the DSP TDM (TDM In) recording. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
<b>[voip/packet_recording/cng_debug_recording/enabled]</b>	Default=0

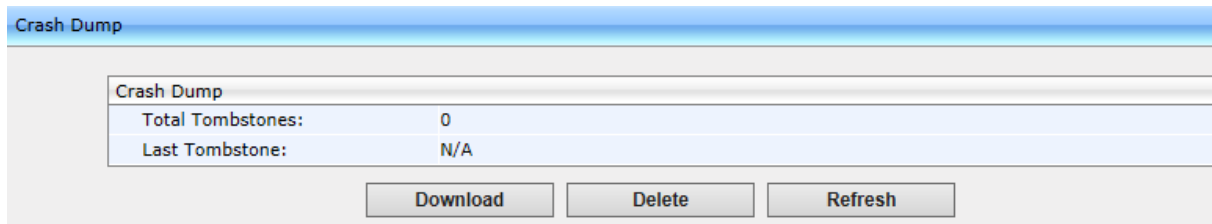
## 51 Creating a Crash Dump File

This section shows how to create a crash dump file using the Web interface. Crash dump copies historical processes to a file. The file is created at the time the problem occurs. You must send it to Genesys Customer Care for troubleshooting.

➤ **To download a crash dump file using the Web interface:**

1. Open the Crash Dump page (Status & Diagnostics tab > Diagnostics menu > Crash Dump).

**Figure 51-1: Web Interface - Crash Dump**



Crash Dump	
Total Tombstones:	0
Last Tombstone:	N/A

**Table 51-1: Crash Dump Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Total tombstones	The number of crashes on the phone.
Last tombstone	The date and time of the last crash (the exact time of the crash).

2. Click **Download** to save the crash dump file on your computer.

## 52 Configuring Port Mirroring

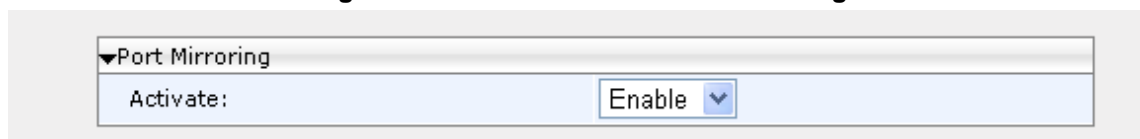
Traffic on the phone's LAN port can be duplicated on its PC port in order to record calls, analyze traffic, and troubleshoot issues.

This port mirroring feature can be configured using the Web interface or configuration file.

➤ **To configure port mirroring using the Web interface:**

1. Access the Recording page (Configuration tab > Network Connections menu > Network Settings).

**Figure 52-1: Web Interface –Port Mirroring**



▼Port Mirroring

Activate: Enable ▼

2. Configure port mirroring according to the parameters in the table below, and then click **Submit**.

➤ **To configure port mirroring using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 52-1: Port Mirroring Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Activate <b>[network/pc_port_mirroring/enabled]</b>	Enables port mirroring. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default) - LAN/PC network interfaces operate in SWITCH mode.</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable - LAN/PC network interfaces operate in HUB mode. The network traffic on the LAN port is reflected in the PC port.</li></ul>

## 53 Enabling Tracing

This section shows how to set up the phone to store trace messages. You can then send the saved logged trace to Genesys Customer Care for effective troubleshooting and diagnosis.



**Note:**

- During regular phone operation it's advisable to *disable* debug tracing for improved performance.
- It's advisable to *enable* debug tracing only if bugs are encountered and Genesys asks you to provide tracing logs.

➤ **To enable tracing:**

1. In the Web interface, open the Tracing System Key Behavior page (**Status & Diagnostics** tab > **Diagnostics** > **Tracing**).

**Figure 53-1: Tracing System Key Behavior**

2. Set the 'Max File Size' field to **1024** (see the table below).
3. Set the 'Trace Level' field to **Debug** to activate tracing to debug level, and then click **Submit** (see the table below).
4. Click **Clean log**, and then power up the phone.
5. To save the log file to your computer, click **Save log**.
6. Send the saved logged trace to Genesys Customer Care for troubleshooting.

➤ **To configure tracing using the configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table 53-1: Tracing Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<b>[system/trace/console_printf/enabled]</b>	Enables / disables console print. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default) – Disables console print.</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable - Enables console print.</li></ul>
Trace Level <b>[system/trace/level]</b>	During regular phone operation it's advisable to <i>disable</i> debug tracing for improved performance. It's advisable to <i>enable</i> debug tracing only if bugs are encountered and Genesys asks you to provide tracing logs, in which case set this parameter to <b>Debug</b> . Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ None (default)</li><li>▪ Emergency</li><li>▪ Error</li><li>▪ Warning</li><li>▪ Notice</li><li>▪ Info</li><li>▪ Debug</li></ul>
Max File Size <b>[system/trace/max_file_size]</b>	Set to <b>1024</b> Default: 200



# **Part XI**

## **Appendices**

# A Configuring Phones in Server-Specific Deployments

This appendix shows how to configure phones in server-specific deployments.

## A.1 BroadSoft's BroadWorks

Features supported in a BroadSoft environment are:

**Table A-1: Features Supported in a BroadSoft Environment**

Feature	420HD
BSFT DMS for provisioning	√
BLF Support	X
Call FWD	√
Call Transfer	√
Call Park	√
Call hold	√
Dial Plan	√
Caller ID	√
Message Waiting Indication	√
Local 3-Way Conference	√
DND	√
Feature key Sync	√
Network Conference	√
Shared Call Appearance	X
Broadworks Phone book support	√
Voice Message Support	√
DNS SRV Lookup for Redundancy and register failover	√
ACD (Automatic Call Distribution)	√

## A.1.1 Configuring DnD

The DnD feature can be configured using the phone's LCD or the Web interface.



**Note:** Before configuring DnD using the phone's LCD, make sure 'Feature Key Synchronization' in the phone's Web interface is disabled (see Section A.1.4)

The DnD feature can also be configured using the BroadSoft BroadWorks application server. The figures below show the DnD configuration and status screens in BroadWorks.

**Figure A-2: Configuring DnD in BroadSoft's BroadWorks - Status**

The screenshot shows the 'Incoming Calls' configuration page in BroadWorks. On the left is a sidebar with 'Options:' including Profile, Incoming Calls (selected), Outgoing Calls, Call Control, Client Applications, Messaging, Service Scripts, and Utilities. The main content area is titled 'Incoming Calls' and is divided into 'Basic' and 'Advanced' sections. In the 'Basic' section, several features are listed with their status: 'Anonymous Rejection - Off', 'Call Forwarding Always - On', 'Call Forwarding Busy - On', 'Call Forwarding No Answer - On', 'Connected Line Identification Restriction - Off', and 'Do Not Disturb - Off'. The 'Do Not Disturb - Off' option is highlighted with a red rectangular box. The 'Advanced' section on the right includes options like 'Alternate Numbers', 'Custom Ringback U', 'Priority Alert - Off', 'Sequential Ring - C', and 'Simultaneous Ring'.

**Figure A-3: Configuring DnD in BroadSoft's BroadWorks**

The screenshot shows the 'Do Not Disturb' configuration page in BroadWorks. At the top, it says 'Group >Users : audiocodes9' and 'Welcome [Logout]'. The left sidebar is identical to Figure A-2. The main content area is titled 'Do Not Disturb' and contains the text: 'Allows you to send your calls directly to your voice messaging box without ringing your phone. In addition, you can make your primary phone emit a short ring burst to inform you when the call is being sent to voice messaging by using the Ring Reminder. This is important when you have forgotten the service is turned on and you are at your phone waiting to receive calls.' Below this text are two sets of buttons: 'OK', 'Apply', and 'Cancel'. The 'Do Not Disturb' toggle is set to 'Off' (radio button selected). There is also a checkbox for 'Play Ring Reminder when a call is blocked' which is currently unchecked. A second set of 'OK', 'Apply', and 'Cancel' buttons is at the bottom.

For detailed information, see related BroadSoft documentation.

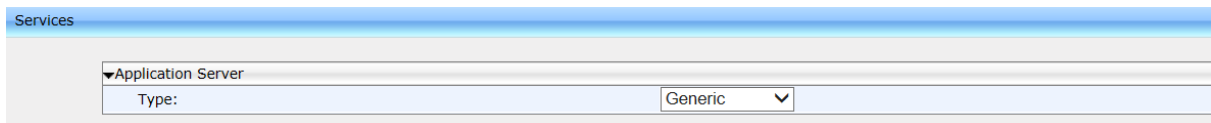
## A.1.2 Configuring FKS

This section shows how to enable Feature Key Synchronization. Enabling it synchronizes the DnD and Call Forward functionalities with the BroadSoft BroadWorks server. After activating the feature, the DnD and Call Forward functionalities are performed by BroadWorks rather than the IP phone. For more information on DnD functionality, see Section 23.8.

➤ **To enable Feature Key Synchronization:**

1. In the Web interface, open the Services screen (**Configuration > Voice over IP > Services**).

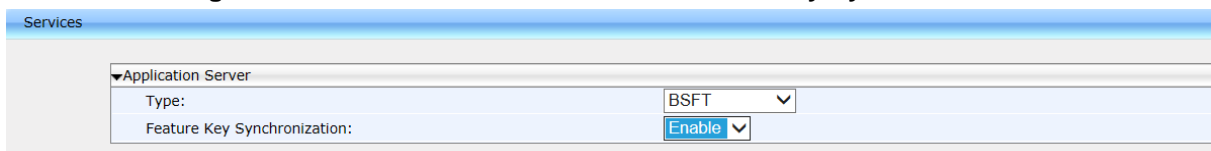
**Figure A-4: Web Interface - Services**



The screenshot shows the 'Services' web interface. Under the 'Application Server' section, there is a 'Type:' dropdown menu currently set to 'Generic'.

2. From the 'Type' dropdown under the Application Server section, select the **BSFT** (Broadsoft) option; the section extends to display the 'Feature Key Synchronization' dropdown.

**Figure A-5: Web Interface – Services - Feature Key Synchronization**



The screenshot shows the 'Services' web interface with the 'Type' dropdown set to 'BSFT'. Below it, the 'Feature Key Synchronization:' dropdown menu is set to 'Enable'.

3. From the 'Feature Key Synchronization' dropdown, select **Enable**, as shown in the figure above, and then click **Submit**; the feature is now enabled.

## A.1.3 Loading the Corporate Directory to the Phone

This section shows how to load the Corporate Directory to the phone. The Corporate Directory can be loaded either

- manually, by loading a (configurable) txt, cfg, or xml file listing all employees and their details, to the phone, via the Directory page in the Web interface
- automatically, by placing the (configurable) txt, cfg, or xml file on the Broadsoft BroadWorks server, and then when the phone is connected to the network, the phone pulls and automatically uploads the file from the server.

➤ **To load the Corporate Directory manually, via the the Web interface:**

1. In the Web interface, open the Directory page (**Configuration > Personal Settings > Directory**).

Directory

Corporate Directory

Directory Page: none

Browse...

Load Corporate Directory

No.	Name	Office	Home	Mobile
-----	------	--------	------	--------

Add Contact

Name:

Office:

Home:

Mobile:

Submit

Personal Directory

Directory Page: 1

Browse...

Save Personal Directory

Load Personal Directory

Delete

Delete All

2. In the Corporate Direction section of the screen, click **Browse** and navigate to and select the txt, cfg, or xml file on your PC.
  3. Click the adjacent **Load Corporate Directory** button; the file is loaded onto the phone.
  4. Verify the upload: On the phone, press the MENU key, navigate down to select the **Directory** option, and then select **Corporate directory**; the directory opens displaying the contacts listed in the corporate directory.
- **To load the Corporate Directory automatically, via the Broadsoft server:**
- Place the txt, cfg, or xml file file on the Broadsoft BroadWorks server; when the phone is connected to the network, it pulls and automatically loads the file to the phone.

### A.1.4 Adding a Contact to the Corporate Directory

This section shows how to add a contact to the Corporate Directory.

➤ **To add a contact to the Corporate Directory:**

- In the Directory page shown in the figure above, enter the contact's Name, Office, Home and Mobile number fields, and then click **Submit**.

### A.1.5 Deleting a Contact from the Corporate Directory

This section shows how to delete a contact from the Corporate Directory.

➤ **To delete a contact to the Corporate Directory:**

1. Scroll down in the Directory page (shown in the figure above), and then select the contact to delete.

**Figure A-6: Web Interface – Directory – Delete a Contact**

No.	name	Office	Home	Mobile	Select
1	Alan Roberts	4263	Dial		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<div> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Delete All"/> </div>					

2. Click **Delete**; the contact is deleted from the Corporate Directory. You can select multiple contacts and then click **Delete All**.

### A.1.6 Disabling Handset Mode

Administrators can disable handset mode using the configuration file parameter 'voip/handset\_mode/enabled' whose default is enabled. Some call centers don't want agents to work with any device other than headsets. In this case, their administrators can change the parameter default to disabled.



**Note:** Some call centers don't even connect the handsets to the phones. In this case, even though the handsets are not physically connected to the phones, administrators should disable the new parameter.

➤ **To disable handset mode:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-2: BroadSoft Server - Shared Call Appearance Add**

Parameter	Description
[voip/handset_mode/enabled]	When disabled [0], the handset becomes unavailable. Configure either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [1] = Enabled (default)</li> <li>▪ [0] = Disabled</li> </ul>

## A.1.7 Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs

Call center administrators can use a configuration file parameter to define a message that will be displayed in agents' phone LCDs, for example: 'Reminder: Your calls might be recorded'. Agents will then see this message, together with the date (in month/day format), displayed in their LCDs when their phones are in idle state.

➤ **To display a message in Agents' phone LCDs:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-3: Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs**

Parameter	Description
<b>[system/display/message_on_screen]</b>	Defines a message that will be displayed in agents' phone LCDs together with the date (in month/day format)

## A.2 Genesys SIP Server for Contact Centers

This section shows system administrators how to quickly set up Genesys' IP phones to operate with a Genesys SIP Server in a Genesys contact center.

### A.2.1 Using DHCP to Auto Provision Phones

After connecting the LAN ports of your phones to the IP network and then connecting the phones to the power supply, the phones will *by default* send a request to the Genesys contact center's network server which will then *automatically allocate* an IP address and send configuration information to each phone.

Make sure that the DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) options in your contact center's DHCP server are correctly configured (see Section 10.2).

### A.2.2 Verifying Firmware Version

After automatic provisioning, make sure the phone's firmware version is correct.

➤ **To verify firmware version:**

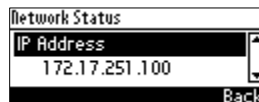
- Navigate to the Firmware Status screen in the phone's LCD (**MENU** key > **Status** > **Firmware Status**).

### A.2.3 Accessing a Phone's Web Interface

Use a standard Web browser such as Microsoft® Internet Explorer® to access any phone's Web interface. Use the phone's IP address as the URL.

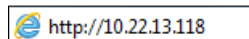
➤ **To obtain the phone's IP address:**

- Access the Network Status screen in the phone's LCD (**MENU** key > **Status** > **Network Status**) and navigate down to **IP Address**:



➤ **To access the phone's Web interface:**

1. Open the Web browser and in the URL address field enter the phone's IP address (for example, **http://10.22.13.118** or **https://10.22.13.118**):



The Web login window opens.



**Note:** The default User Name and Password are **admin** and **1234** respectively.

2. Alternatively, if your DHCP and DNS servers are synchronized, you can access the phone Web browser using the following method:  
**http://<Phone Model>-<MAC Address>.<Domain Name>**  
E.g. http://420hd-001122334455.corp.YourCompany.com
3. Enter the User Name and Password, and then click **OK**.

## A.2.4 Configuring Dual Registration to Ensure SIP Business Continuity for Agents

This section shows how to configure dual registration for Genesys SIP Business Continuity, using the Web interface or configuration file.

Genesys' 420HD IP phone supports dual registration for integrating into Genesys' SIP Business Continuity architecture.

SIP Business Continuity provides the ability for a group of agents to continue offering critical business functions to customers in the event of a loss of all Genesys components running at a particular site.

The SIP Business Continuity architecture uses a synchronized, two-site deployment, where Genesys switch and server components are mirrored at each site in an active-active configuration, so that any agent can log in to either switch, at any time.

In a standalone SIP Server configuration with Business Continuity mode activated, Genesys 420HD IP phone will register on two sites simultaneously (i.e., register on both peer SIP Servers at the same time).

### ➤ To configure using the Web Interface:

1. In the Web interface, access the SIP Proxy and Registrar section in the Signaling Protocol screen (**Configuration** menu > **Voice Over IP** > **Signaling Protocol**):

**Figure A-7: Web Interface - Signaling Protocol – SIP Proxy and Registrar**

The screenshot shows the 'Signaling Protocol' configuration window with the 'SIP Proxy and Registrar' section expanded. The settings are as follows:

Parameter	Value
Use SIP Proxy:	Enable
Proxy IP Address or Host Name:	10.38.5.107
Proxy Port:	5060
Enable Registrar Keep Alive:	Disable
Maximum Number of Authentication Retries:	4
Use SIP Proxy IP and Port for Registration:	Enable
Use SIP Registrar:	Disable
Registration Expires:	3600 Seconds
Registration Failed Expires:	60 Seconds
Use SIP Outbound Proxy:	Disable
Redundant Proxy Mode:	Simultaneous (selected)

The 'Redundant Proxy Mode' dropdown menu is open, showing the following options: Disable, Primary-Fallback, and Simultaneous. The 'Simultaneous' option is currently selected.



**Note:** If you choose to use the BroadSoft-based Automatic Call Distributor (ACD) method in a SIP Business Continuity deployment, the 'voip/signalling/sip/redundant\_proxy/mode' cfg file parameter and the 'Redundant Proxy Mode' Web interface parameter cannot be set to **Simultaneous**.

Figure A-8: Web Interface - Signaling Protocol – SIP Proxy and Registrar – Secondary Proxy

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Signaling Protocol" with a sub-section "SIP Proxy and Registrar". The settings are as follows:

- Use SIP Proxy: Enable (dropdown)
- Proxy IP Address or Host Name: 10.38.5.107 (text input)
- Proxy Port: 5060 (text input)
- Enable Registrar Keep Alive: Disable (dropdown)
- Maximum Number of Authentication Retries: 4 (text input)
- Use SIP Proxy IP and Port for Registration: Enable (dropdown)
- Use SIP Registrar: Disable (dropdown)
- Registration Expires: 3600 (text input) Seconds
- Registration Failed Expires: 60 (text input) Seconds
- Use SIP Outbound Proxy: Disable (dropdown)
- Redundant Proxy Mode: Simultaneous (dropdown)
- Secondary Proxy Address: 0.0.0.0 (text input)
- Secondary Proxy Port: 5060 (text input)

A "Submit" button with a checkmark icon is located at the bottom right of the form.

2. Configure the parameters using table below as reference.

➤ To configure using configuration file:

- Use the table below as reference.

Table A-4: SIP Proxy and Registrar Parameters

Parameter	Description
Use SIP Proxy [voip/signalling/sip/use_proxy]	Determines whether to use a SIP Proxy server. Configure <b>[1] Enable</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Proxy IP Address or Host Name [voip/signalling/sip/proxy_address]	Enter the IP address or host name (for example, <a href="http://genesys.com">genesys.com</a> ) of the SIP proxy server. Default: 0.0.0.0
Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/proxy_port]	The UDP or TCP port of the SIP proxy server. Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.

Parameter	Description
Enable Registrar Keep Alive <b>[voip/signalling/sip/registrar_ka/enabled]</b>	<p>Determines whether to use the registration keep-alive mechanism based on SIP OPTION messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ If there is no response from the server, the timeout for re-registering is automatically reduced to a user-defined value (<b>voip/signalling/sip/registration_failed_timeout</b>)</li> <li>▪ When the phone re-registers, the keep-alive messages are re-sent periodically.</li> </ul>
Registrar Keep Alive Period <b>[voip/signalling/sip/registrar_ka/timeout]</b>	<p>Defines the registration keep-alive time interval (in seconds) between Keep-Alive messages.</p> <p>Range: 40 to 65536. Default: 60.</p>
Maximum Number of Authentication Retries <b>[voip/signalling/sip/proxy_timeout]</b>	<p>The SIP proxy server registration timeout (in seconds).</p> <p>Range: 0 to 86400. Default: 3600.</p>
Registration Failed Expires <b>[voip/signalling/sip/registration_failed_timeout]</b>	<p>If registration fails, this parameter determines the interval between the register messages periodically sent until successful registration.</p> <p>Range: 1 to 86400. Default: 300.</p>
Use SIP Registrar <b>[voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/enabled]</b>	<p>Determines whether the phone registers to a separate SIP Registrar server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Use SIP Proxy IP and Port for Registration <b>[voip/signalling/sip/use_proxy_ip_port_for_registrar]</b>	<p>Determines whether to use the SIP proxy's IP address and port for registration. When enabled, there is no need to configure the address of the registrar separately.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Registrar IP Address or Host Name <b>[voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/addr]</b>	<p>The IP address or host name of the Registrar server.</p> <p>Default: 0.0.0.0.</p>
Registrar Port <b>[voip/signalling/sip/sip_registrar/port]</b>	<p>The UDP or TCP port of the Registrar server.</p> <p>Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.</p>

Parameter	Description
Use SIP Outbound Proxy [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/enabled]	Determines whether an outbound SIP proxy server is used (all SIP messages are sent to this server as the first hop). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>
Outbound Proxy IP Address or Host Name [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/addr]	The IP address of the outbound proxy (for example, <a href="http://genesys.com">genesys.com</a> ; i.e., the same as that configured for the 'Proxy IP Address or Host Name' parameter above). If this parameter is set, all outgoing messages (including Registration messages) are sent to this Proxy according to the Stack behavior. Default: 0.0.0.0
Outbound Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/port]	The port on which the outbound proxy listens. Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.
Redundant Proxy Mode [voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/mode]	The call center's network administrator can select either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Disable</b> -OR-</li> <li>▪ <b>Primary Fallback</b> -OR-</li> <li>▪ <b>Simultaneous</b></li> </ul> For the dual-registration feature, select <b>Simultaneous</b> ; two proxies are registered simultaneously so that at least one should be up and running at any time, preventing the call center from going down. Note that when using the BroadSoft ACD in a SIP Business Continuity deployment, this parameter cannot be set to <b>Simultaneous</b> .
Secondary Proxy Address [voip/signalling/sip/secondary_proxy/address]	Displayed only when <b>Simultaneous</b> is selected for 'Redundant Proxy Mode' (see previous parameter). Define the IP address of the secondary proxy that will be up simultaneously with the primary.
Secondary Proxy Port [voip/signalling/sip/secondary_proxy/port]	Displayed only when <b>Simultaneous</b> is selected for 'Redundant Proxy Mode' (see the parameter before the previous). Define the port of the secondary proxy that will be up simultaneously with the primary.

## A.2.5 Disabling the Web Interface

This feature lets the call center's network administrator block Web interface access to agents employed in the call center.

➤ **To disable access using configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-5: Disabling the Web Interface**

Parameter	Description
[system/web/enabled]	Determines whether or not to enable access to the phone's Web interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (access prohibited)</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable (default) (access enabled)</li></ul> This can avoid a potential scenario in which agents deliberately or by accident disrupt the operation of the call center.

## A.2.6 Forcing a Reboot on Provisioning

This feature lets the call center's network administrator configure a forced reboot on agents' phones after provisioning.

➤ **To force a reboot on provisioning using configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-6: Forcing a Reboot on Provisioning**

Parameter	Description
[voip/services/notify/check_sync/force_reboot_enabled]	Determines whether or not to force a reboot on provisioning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li><li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li></ul>

## A.2.7 Provisioning using TFTP / FTP / HTTP / HTTPS in DHCP Options 66/67

This feature lets network administrators enable phones to be automatically provisioned when the phones are plugged in, using TFTP / FTP / HTTP / HTTPS in DHCP Options 66/67.

## A.2.8 Enabling Agents to Sign in with Phone Numbers

This feature lets the call center administrator power up all phones without setting a valid SIP account. When an agent then wants to use their phone, they register to the network with their phone number.

➤ **To enable the feature using configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-7: Enabling Agents to Sign in with Phone Numbers**

Parameter	Description
<b>[system/login_sk_before_signed_in]</b>	<p>Determines whether or not to enable agents sign in with phone numbers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>■ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>

## A.2.9 Locking Agents Phones Alphabetical Keys

This feature lets call center network administrators lock agents' phones' alphabetical (non-numerical) keys so that only numerical keys are available to them. This feature provides call centers the option to limit agents to work-specific tasks. The feature reduces private activity on the part of agents. Agents cannot, for example, add contacts to a personal directory.

When this feature is enabled, agents can only use numbers. Only two menus are available in agents phones LCDs:

- Status
- Administration

➤ **To lock alphabetical keys using configuration file:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-8: Locking Agents Phones Alphabetical Keys**

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/block_non_numeric_key]</b>	<p>Determines whether or not to lock agent's phones alphabetical keys and only allow them to use numerical keys.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>■ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul>

## A.2.10 Playing a Beep on an Incoming Call

This feature lets call center network administrators configure a beep to be played when a call comes in if auto-answer is configured. The beep is played on both speaker and headset. Agents will know from the beep that they have an incoming call in which to attend. The beep may be known as a zip tone or ziptone.



**Note:** To configure the auto-answer feature, see Section [23.7](#).

➤ To configure playing a beep using configuration file:

- Use the table below as reference.

Table A-9: Playing a Beep on an Incoming Call

Parameter	Description
[voip/auto_answer/headset_beep/enabled]	Determines whether or not to play a beep on an incoming call, on the headset. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li><li>▪ [1] Enable</li></ul>
[voip/auto_answer/speakerphone_beep/enabled]	Determines whether or not to play a beep on an incoming call, on the speaker. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li><li>▪ [1] Enable</li></ul>

## A.2.11 Enabling Proactive Mute

This feature lets call center network administrators enable a proactive mute when calls come in so that when they come in, callers cannot hear the agents until the agents unmute by pressing the **Mute** button. The feature can protect call centers from agent conduct that might be offensive to callers. Agents may for example pass an offensive remark to one another about a caller whose call is coming in, without realizing the caller can hear.

➤ To enable proactive mute using configuration file:

- Use the table below as reference.

Table A-10: Enabling Proactive Mute

Parameter	Description
[voip/proactive_mute/enabled]	Determines whether or not to enable proactive mute. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li><li>▪ [1] Enable</li></ul>

## A.2.12 Configuring Automatic Answer

You can configure a supplementary service on the phones called Automatic Answer. The feature is configured using the Configuration File. Use the table below as a configuration reference.

**Table A-11: Automatic Answer**

Parameter	Description
<b>voip/talk_event/enabled</b>	<p>Enables the 'talk' event feature.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> Enable</li> </ul> <p>The phone automatically answers an incoming call if it receives a SIP NOTIFY message with the 'talk' event. If a call is already in progress, the call is put on hold and the incoming call is answered.</p>

## A.2.13 Regulating the 'Logged out' Message

This feature lets call center network administrators enable/limit the length of time the 'Logged out' message is displayed in the phone's idle screen after agents log out.

When agents log out, the 'Logged out' message will only be displayed in the phone's idle screen for the length of time, in seconds, configured by the call center network administrator. After the configured time lapses, the message disappears from the screen.

Administrators can also disable the feature.

➤ **To regulate the feature using the configuration file:**

1. Open the Configuration File page in the Web interface (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** > **Configuration File**).
2. Configure the 'logged\_out\_message\_timer' parameter using the table below as reference.

**Table A-12: Regulating the 'Logged out' Message**

Parameter	Description
<b>[voip/services/ACD/logged_out_message_timer]</b>	<p><b>[-1]</b> Disabled (default)</p> <p><b>[0]</b> No 'Logged out' message is displayed.</p> <p><b>[&gt;1]</b> The time, in seconds, that lapses before the 'Logged out' message, displayed in the phone's idle screen after an agent logs out, disappears. This value also enables the feature.</p>

## A.2.14 3PCC (Third Party Call Control)

The 3PCC feature lets users control phones remotely from computer applications. 3PCC always supports the following functions:

- MakeCall (call initiation/setup)
- Release
- Hold
- Retrieve
- Transfer
- Consult
- Conference
- DTMF

➤ **To configure 3PCC using Configuration File:**

- ✓ Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-13: 3PCC Parameters**

Parameter	Description
[voip/talk_event/enabled]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>■ [1] Enable</li> </ul>

## A.2.15 Disabling Handset Mode

Administrators can disable handset mode using the configuration file parameter 'voip/handset\_mode/enabled' whose default is enabled.

Some call centers don't want agents to work with any device other than headsets. In this case, their administrators can change the parameter default to disabled.



**Note:** Some call centers don't even connect the handsets to the phones. In this case, even though the handsets are not physically connected to the phones, administrators should disable the new parameter.

➤ **To disable handset mode:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-14: BroadSoft Server - Shared Call Appearance Add**

Parameter	Description
[voip/handset_mode/enabled]	<p>When disabled [0], the handset becomes unavailable. Configure either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ [1] = Enabled (default)</li> <li>■ [0] = Disabled</li> </ul>

## A.2.16 Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs

Call center administrators can use a configuration file parameter to define a message that will be displayed in agents' phone LCDs, for example: 'Reminder: Your calls might be recorded'. Agents will then see this message, together with the date (in month/day format), displayed in their LCDs when their phones are in idle state.

➤ **To display a message in Agents' phone LCDs:**

- Use the table below as reference.

**Table A-15: Displaying a Message in Agents' LCDs**

Parameter	Description
[system/display/message_on_screen]	Defines a message that will be displayed in agents' phone LCDs together with the date (in month/day format)

## A.2.17 Configuring a Redundant (Backup) Genesys Server

An IP phone can be registered on two Genesys servers simultaneously, to provide immediate backup. The feature enables quick transition to the redundant backup server; redundant proxy usage is available all the time. The IP phone is registered on the redundant server in the same way as it is registered on the primary server.

➤ **To register a phone on the redundant server:**

3. Access the Signaling Protocol page (**Configuration** tab > **Voice Over IP** menu > **Signaling Protocols**).

**Figure A-9: Registering a Phone on the Redundant Genesys Server**

4. Scroll down to the 'Redundant Proxy Mode' and 'Secondary Proxy Address' parameters. Configure them using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

**Table A-16: Redundant Genesys Server - Parameters**

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

Parameter	Description
Redundant Proxy Mode	From the dropdown, select <b>Simultaneously</b> ; you're now in Dual Registration mode; when in this mode, the value of the parameter 'Retransmission Timer T1' is taken from the configuration file parameter 'voip/signalling/sip/redundant_proxy/dual_reg/t1' rather than from the 'Retransmission Timer T1' parameter (see <a href="#">Error! Reference source not found.</a> for more information about this parameter).
Secondary Proxy Address	Provide the IP address of the redundant proxy; the IP phone then registers on both servers from the outset, instead of transitioning from one to another.

## B Configuring Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)

**Note:**

- Genesys' IP Phones seamlessly interwork with Genesys SIP Server to support ACD functionality. The IP Phones support two different ACD methods: a legacy method referred to as 'Genesys' in the Web interface, and an enhanced method based on BroadSoft's ACD capabilities, referred to as 'BROADSOFT' in the Web interface.
- For optimal ACD functionality with Genesys SIP Server, the BroadSoft-based ACD method must be chosen.

This appendix shows how to enable the ACD (Automatic Call Distribution) feature on the phone using either the Web interface or the configuration file. The feature automatically distributes incoming calls to agents' phones on the basis of agent availability and unavailability.

In contact centers, ACD is a key feature of CTI (Computer Telephony Integration). The feature automatically distributes incoming calls to a specific group of terminals that contact center agents use. Most ACD functionality is the SIP server's responsibility; however, users must inform the Call Center SIP server on the following events:

- Whenever the call center representative logs in or out on the IP Phone. This information is included in a SIP SUBSCRIBE message.
- Whenever the call center representative indicates whether they are ready or not to take a call. When the Broadsoft server is configured, the user can also specify the reason for their unavailability e.g. Lunch break. All this information is included in a SIP NOTIFY message.
- Whenever the user is busy with After Call Work (ACW) (only relevant when a Broadsoft SIP server is configured). This information is included in a SIP NOTIFY message.

All the above actions can be performed on the IP Phone (refer to the *User's Manual*). The Call Center SIP server then uses the above presence information to automatically distribute calls between agents based on their availability.

ACD systems allow companies that handle a large number of incoming phone calls to direct the callers to a company employee who is able to talk at the earliest opportunity.

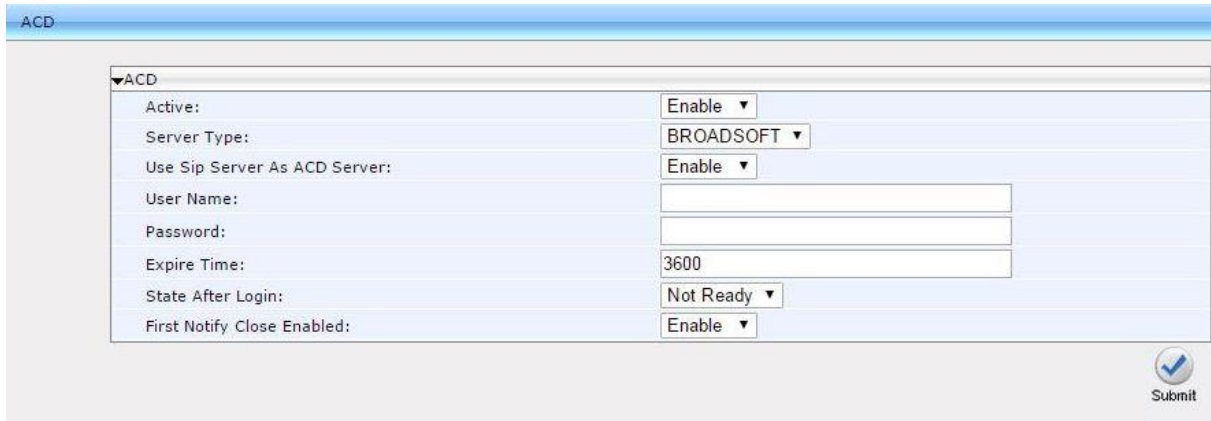
The feature is typically implemented in contact centers encountering large numbers of incoming customer calls that must be distributed to available agents to provide immediate support to callers. The feature automatically directs incoming calls to agents working in the contact center whose presence status is 'Ready' rather than not ready. The feature's main benefit is to reduce the time customers are kept waiting and thereby improve service.

Genesys' IP phones seamlessly interwork with Genesys' SIP Server to support the ACD feature. Once an agent signs in on their phone to ACD, their status is set to 'Ready' and synchronized with Genesys' Server. Incoming calls are directed to an agent whenever their status becomes 'Ready'.

➤ **To configure the ACD server using the Web interface:**

1. In the Web interface, access the ACD page (**Configuration** tab > **Advanced Applications** > **ACD**):

**Figure B-1: Web Interface - ACD**



ACD

▼ACD

Active: Enable ▼

Server Type: BROADSOFT ▼

Use Sip Server As ACD Server: Enable ▼

User Name:

Password:

Expire Time: 3600

State After Login: Not Ready ▼

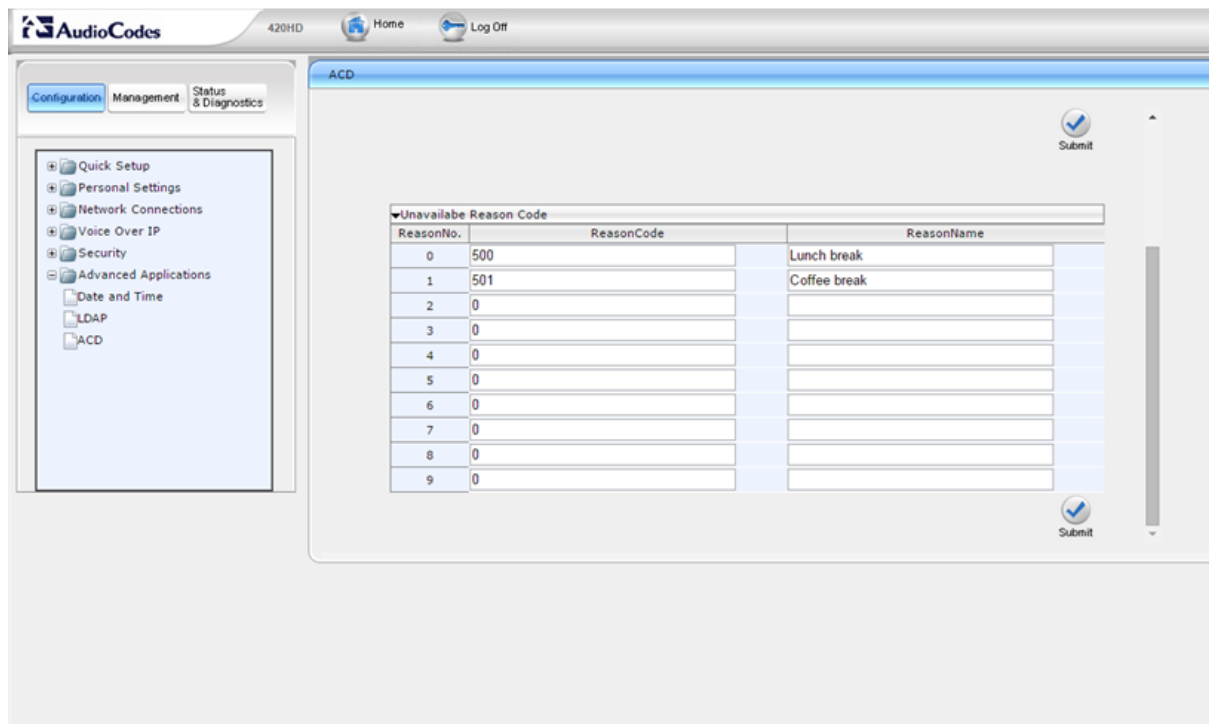
First Notify Close Enabled: Enable ▼

Submit



**Note:** For optimal ACD functionality with Genesys, select the **BROADSOFT** option from the 'Server Type' dropdown.

**Figure B-2: Web Interface – ACD – Unavailable Reason Code**



AudioCodes 420HD Home Log Off

Configuration Management Status & Diagnostics

Quick Setup

Personal Settings

Network Connections

Voice Over IP

Security

Advanced Applications

Date and Time

LDAP

ACD

ACD

Submit

ReasonNo.	ReasonCode	ReasonName
0	500	Lunch break
1	501	Coffee break
2	0	
3	0	
4	0	
5	0	
6	0	
7	0	
8	0	
9	0	

Submit

2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference.
- **To configure the ACD server using the configuration file:**
- Define a path and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

**Table B-1: ACD Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Active [voip/services/ACD/enabled]	From the 'Active' drop-down, choose <b>Enable</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable (default)</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Server Type [voip/services/ACD/server_type]	From the 'Server Type' drop-down list, select <b>GENESYS</b> or <b>BROADSOFT</b> . Select the <b>BROADSOFT</b> option for optimal ACD functionality with Genesys. When you select <b>BROADSOFT</b> , after logging into the ACD server, the <b>ACW</b> (After Call Work) softkey will be displayed on the phone and the <b>Missed</b> softkey displayed in the command menu along with the FORWARD and DND options. Note that administrators can optionally hide the <b>ACW</b> softkey (see the next parameter).
[voip/services/ACD/show_acw_softkey/enabled]	Allows administrators to hide the <b>ACW</b> softkey. After logging into the call center's Automatic Call Distributor (ACD) server, the <b>ACW</b> softkey is by default displayed in the phone's LCD [1]. Administrators can change this default and hide the softkey [0]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable (default)</li> </ul> The default softkey layout is <b>ACW, READY/Not Ready</b> (when the user is logged on), <b>Login/Logout</b> and Command menu items including <b>Missed</b> and <b>DND</b> . When the <b>ACW</b> softkey is disabled, the display stays the same but <i>without</i> the <b>ACW</b> softkey.
Use Sip Server As ACD Server [voip/services/ACD/server_use_sip_server]	From the drop-down, choose <b>Enable</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ [0] Disable</li> <li>▪ [1] Enable</li> </ul>
Expire Time [voip/services/ACD/expire_time]	The server registration timeout, in seconds. Range: 0 to 86400. Default: 3600.
Server Address [voip/services/ACD/server_address]	Displayed only when 'Use SIP Server As ACD Server' is set to <b>Disable</b> (see previous). Defines the IP address of the ACD server. Default: 0.0.0.0
Server Port [voip/services/ACD/server_port]	Displayed only when 'Use SIP Server As ACD Server' is set to <b>Disable</b> (see previous). Defines the port of the ACD server. Default: 80

Parameter	Description
User Name [system/user_name]	Enter the agent's User Name. The agent will use this name when logging in to ACD in order to define or change availability status.
Password [system/password]	Enter a password if necessary.
State After Login <sup>1</sup> [voip/services/ACD/state_after_login]	<p>The call center's network administrator can select either</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Ready</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Not Ready</b> (default)</li> <li>▪ <b>Not Set</b></li> </ul> <p>If set to <b>Ready</b>, each phone in the call center will automatically be set to a state of readiness to take incoming calls immediately after the call center's agents log in.</p> <p>If set to <b>Not Ready</b>, agents can log in and then manually configure their readiness status in the phone's LCD, giving them time to perform personal tasks before beginning work.</p> <p>If set to <b>Not Set</b>, the status of the phone after login will be controlled by the server. For example, if the server is set to be in 'Ready' status following login, the phone will be in 'Ready' status when the user logs in.</p>
First Notify Close Enabled [voip/services/ACD/first_notify_close/enabled]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>[0]</b> When an agent logs in, the ACD server is notified that the agent is Ready (available) to take calls.</li> <li>▪ <b>[1]</b> (Default) When an agent logs in, the ACD server is notified that the agent is Not Ready (unavailable) to take calls. This gives agents time to get organized.</li> </ul>
[voip/services/ACD/logged_out_message_timer]	For detailed information, see Appendix <a href="#">A.3.12</a> .
Unavailable Reason Code [voip/services/ACD/unavailable_reason/0-9/code]  Up to 10 reasons can be defined (0-9).	<p>Specifies the code that is sent in the SIP NOTIFY message to the Call Center SIP server to indicate the specific reason for the Call Center representative's unavailability.</p> <p>This parameter is relevant when the 'Server Type' parameter (see above) is <b>Broadsoft</b>.</p>
Reason Name [voip/services/ACD/unavailable_reason/0-9/name]	<p>Describes the unavailability reason code (configured above). For example, 'Lunch'.</p> <p>This parameter is relevant when the 'Server Type' parameter (see above) is <b>Broadsoft</b>.</p>

<sup>1</sup> This parameter is only relevant to Genesys Call Centers.

## B.1 Softkey Display and Command Menu Options

The following tables show the different softkey display states and command menu options that are available according to the user's login state and the configured SIP server.

**Table B-2: Broadsoft-Softkey Display States and Command Menu Options**

State		Softkey #0	Softkey #1	Softkey #2	Softkey #3
Idle	ACD Disabled	Directory	Missed	Forward	DnD
	ACD Enabled (logged out)	Missed	-	Login	Command Menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forward</li> <li>DnD</li> </ul>
	ACD Enabled (logged in)	ACW	Not Ready or Ready	Logout	Command Menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Missed</li> <li>Forward</li> <li>DnD</li> </ul>
Ongoing Call State	ACD Disabled	Hold	Conf	New Call	End
	ACD Enabled (logged out)				
	ACD Enabled (logged in)				
State		Softkey #0	Softkey #1	Softkey #2	Softkey #3
Idle	ACD Disabled	Directory	Missed	Forward	DnD
	ACD Enabled (logged out)	Missed	-	Login	Command Menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forward</li> <li>DnD</li> </ul>
	ACD Enabled (logged in)	Missed	Not Ready or Ready	Logout	Command Menu: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forward</li> <li>DnD</li> </ul>
Ongoing Call State	ACD Disabled	Hold	Conf	New Call	End
	ACD Enabled (logged out)				
	ACD Enabled (logged in)				

## C Recovering AudioCodes' IP Phone

This appendix shows how to recover AudioCodes' IP phone.

➤ **To recover the phone, follow this procedure:**

1. Identify that the phone is in recovery mode (see [below](#))
2. Recover the phone (see [below](#))
3. Verify that the phone downloaded the image file (see [below](#))

### C.1 Identifying that the Phone is in Recovery Mode

This section shows how to identify that the phone is in recovery mode.

➤ **To identify that the phone is in recovery mode:**

- Observe the following displayed in the phone's LCD:

**Figure C-1: Identifying Recovery Mode**



-OR-

- Observe that the phone reboots every +-5 seconds.

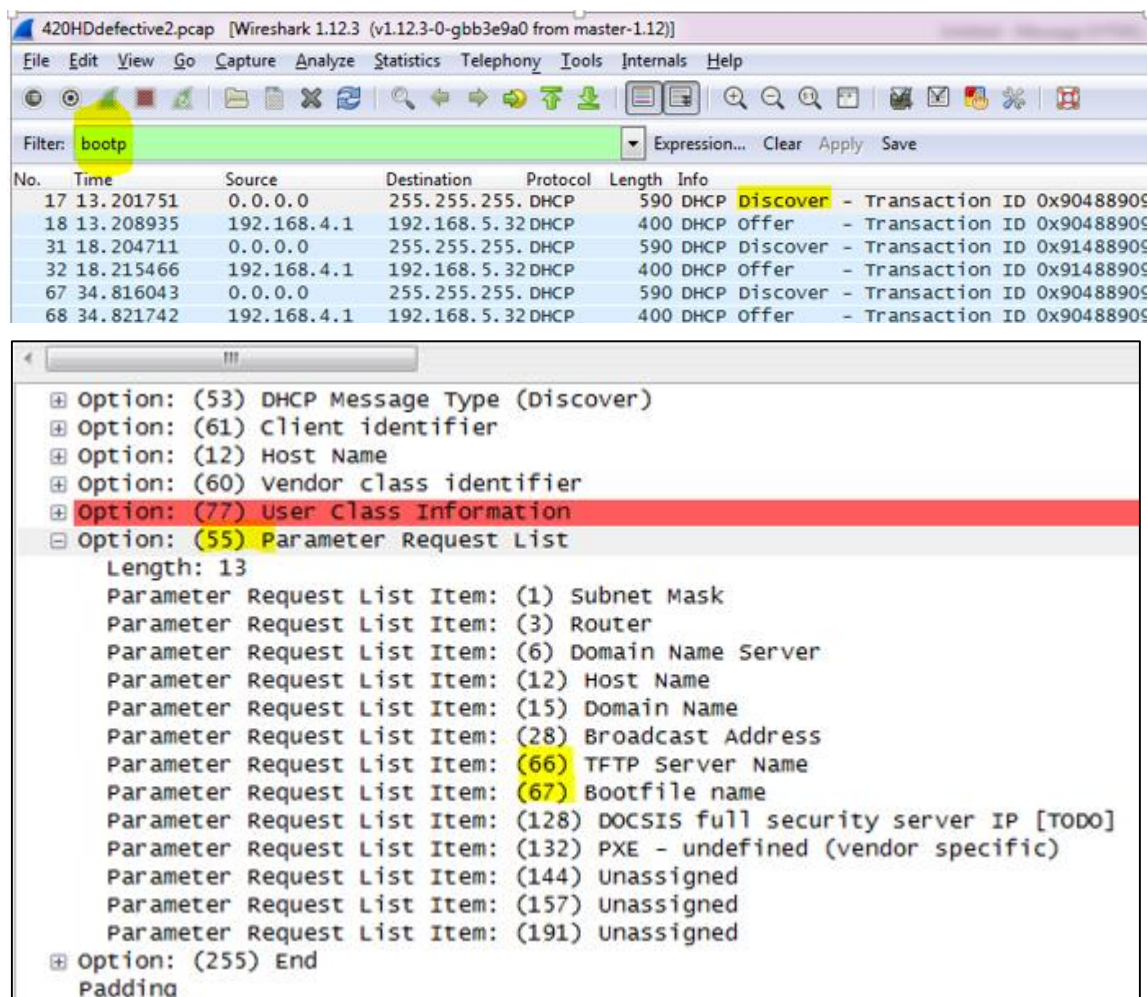
### C.2 Verifying that the Phone is in Recovery Mode

You can verify that the phone is in recovery mode.

➤ **To verify that the phone is in recovery mode:**

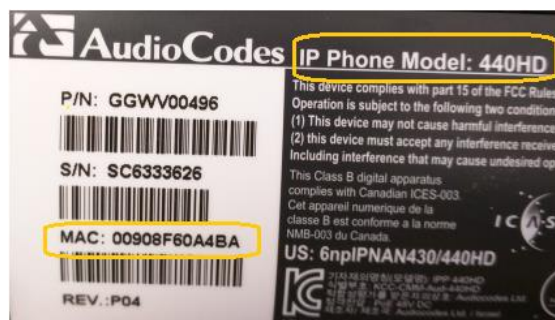
1. Connect the phone to the PC and run WireShark.
2. In WireShark, filter by **bootp** and then check if the phone is requesting Option 66 (TFTP Server) & Option 67 (Bootfile) under Option 55 in the 'DHCP Discover' message, as shown in the figures below.

**Figure C-2: Verifying Recovery Mode in Wireshark**



3. Make sure that the source Ethernet MAC address is the same as that labeled on the base of the phone. For example:

Figure C-3: Source Ethernet MAC Address in Wireshark Identical to Phone Base's



## C.3 Recovering the Phone

This section shows how to recover the phone.

➤ **To recover the phone:**

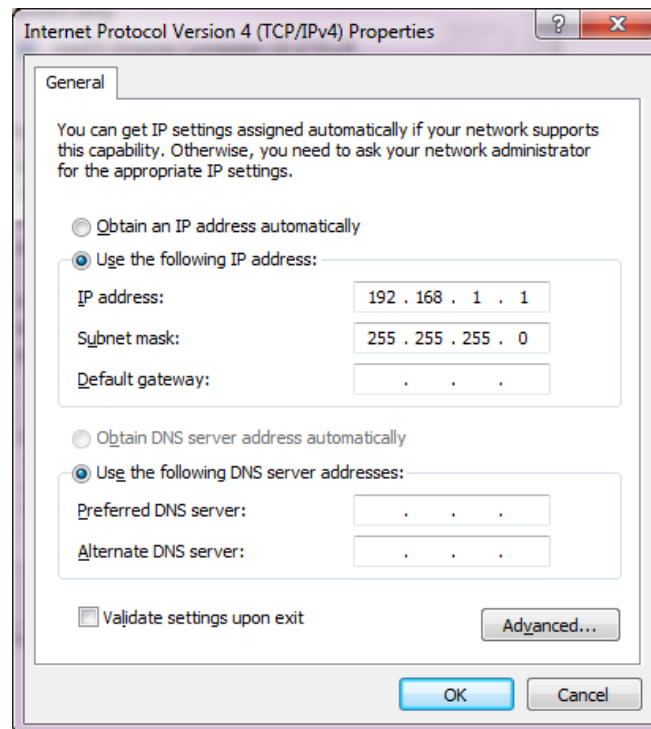
1. Configure the PC NIC to which the phone is connected as follows:

- IP address: **192.168.1.1**
- Subnet mask: **255.255.255.0**

Figure C-4 below shows the configured settings.

2. Make sure the phone is directly connected (or via a network hub) to the PC LAN NIC.
3. Disable all other PC NICs (also wireless NICs).

**Figure C-4: Recovering the Phone - Configure the PC NIC to which the Phone is Connected**

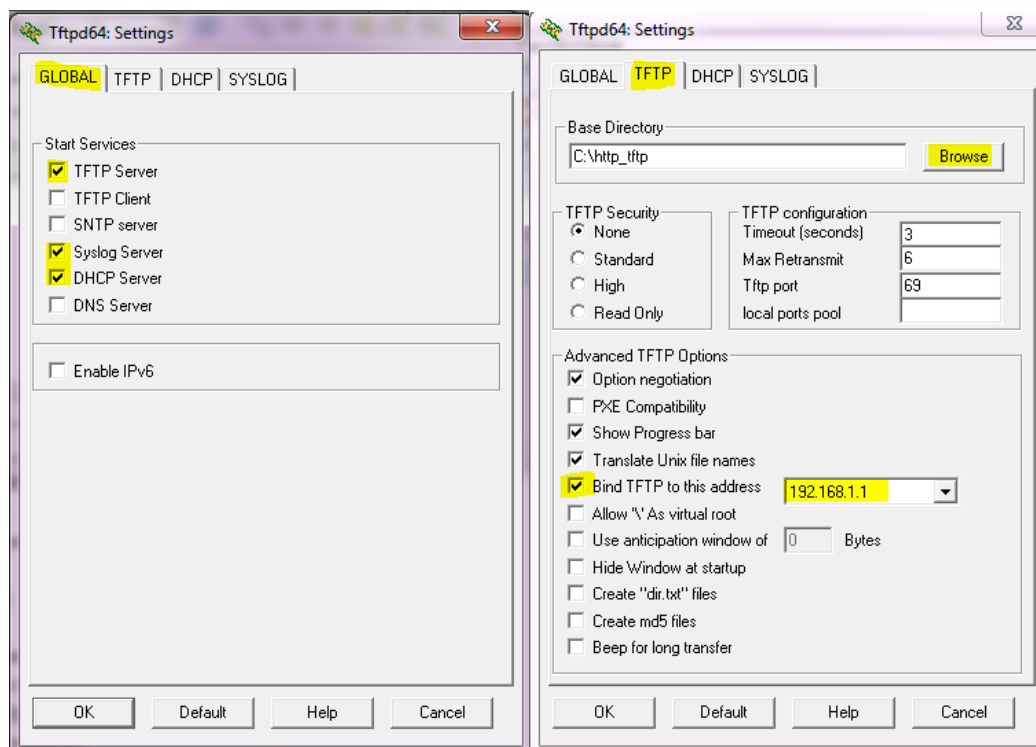


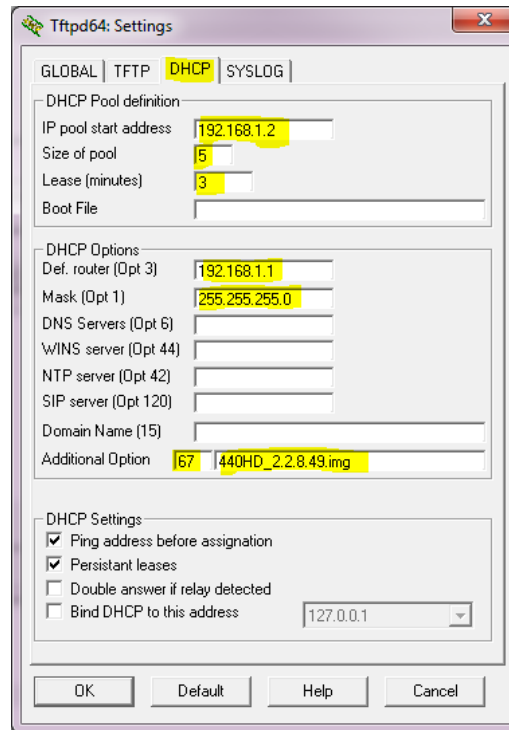
4. Download the following **tftpd64** freeware tool:  
[http://tftpd32.jounin.net/tftpd32\\_download.html](http://tftpd32.jounin.net/tftpd32_download.html)
5. Run the **tftpd64.exe** executable.
6. Click **Settings** and configure the following settings:

**Table C-1: Configuring tftpd64 Settings**

Global	TFTP	DHCP
--------	------	------

TFTP Server [=option66]	Browse to the directory in which the AudioCodes IP phone firmware is located.	IP pool start address: 192.168.1.2
Syslog Server	Bind the TFTP to IP address <b>192.168.1.1</b>	Size of pool: 5
DHCP Server	Leave all other options at their default.	Lease: 3
		Default.router: 192.168.1.1
		Mask: 255.255.255.0
		Additional Option: 67, FW_file_name.img





7. For **tftps64** to accept the new settings, close and open **tftpd64**.

After (1) **tftpd64** is restarted, (2) the phone is directly connected to the PC, and (3) the network settings referred to above are applied, the phone immediately gets the required options [66 and 67] and begins downloading the firmware. Verify that the phone is downloading the image file as shown in the next section.

## C.4 Verifying that the Phone is Downloading the Image File

This section shows how to verify that the phone is downloading the firmware image file.

➤ **To verify that the phone is downloading the image file:**

- use Wireshark -or-
- use tftpd64 -or-
- use the phone LCD

### C.4.1 Verifying Using Wireshark

1. In Wireshark, verify that the four DHCP 'DORA' (**D**iscover; **O**ffer; **R**quest; **A**CK) steps are accomplished, as shown in the figure below.

**Figure C-5: Verifying with Wireshark that the Phone is Downloading Phone .img File**

Wireshark 1.12.3 (v1.12.3-0-gbb3e9a0 from master-1.12)

Filter: bootp

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Length	Info
4	13.029407000	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.255	DHCP	590	DHCP Discover - Transaction ID 0x9160a4ba
6	13.556598000	192.168.1.1	255.255.255.255	DHCP	359	DHCP Offer - Transaction ID 0x9160a4ba
7	13.561085000	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.255	DHCP	590	DHCP Request - Transaction ID 0x9160a4ba
8	13.568623000	192.168.1.1	255.255.255.255	DHCP	359	DHCP ACK - Transaction ID 0x9160a4ba
61	17.427393000	192.168.1.1	255.255.255.255	DHCP	330	DHCP Inform - Transaction ID 0x563d2f0

Frame 8: 359 bytes on wire (2872 bits), 359 bytes captured (2872 bits) on interface 0

Ethernet II, Src: f8:ca:b8:52:3d:d3 (f8:ca:b8:52:3d:d3), Dst: Broadcast (ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff)

Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1), Dst: 255.255.255.255 (255.255.255.255)

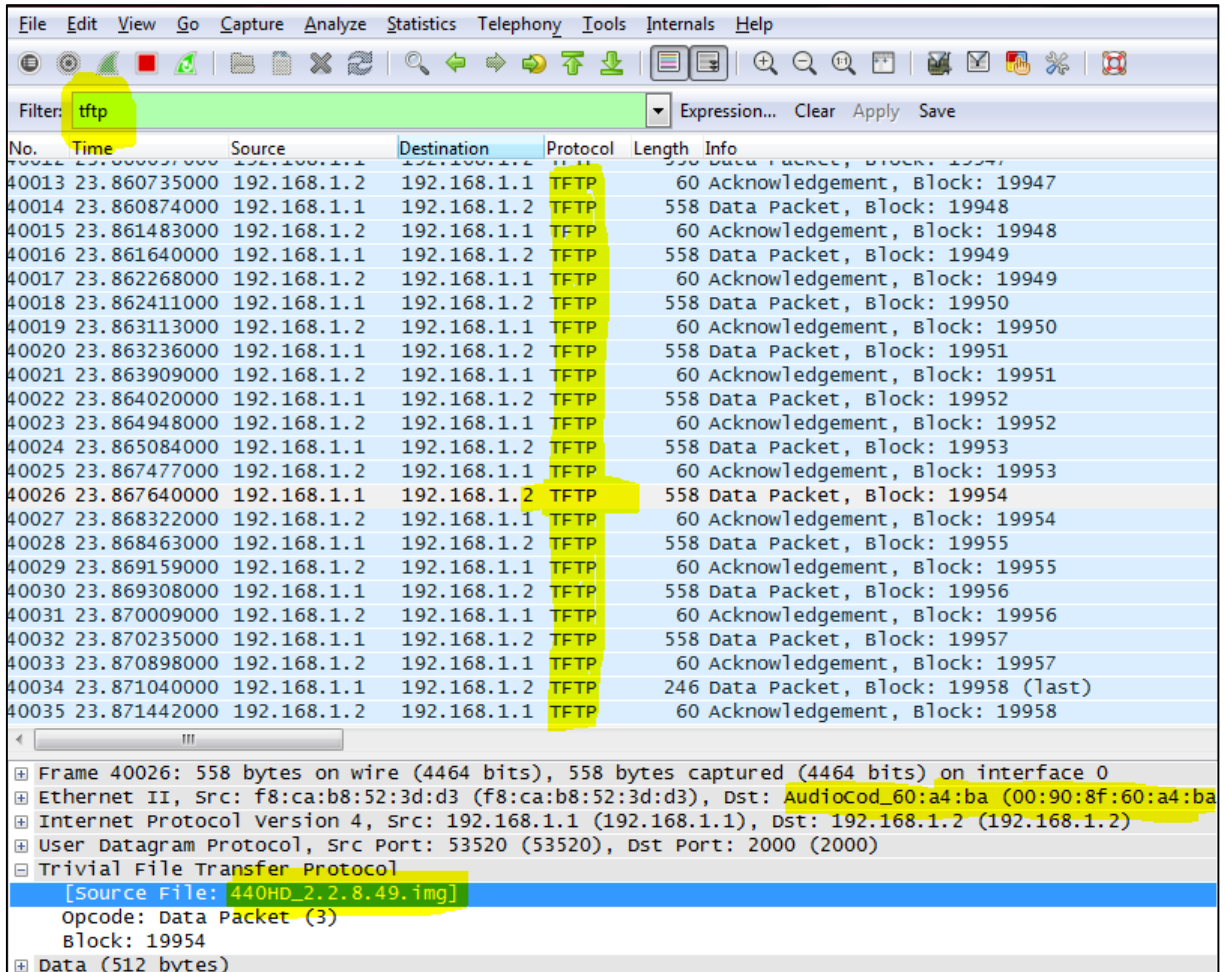
User Datagram Protocol, Src Port: 67 (67), Dst Port: 68 (68)

Bootstrap Protocol (ACK)

- Message type: Boot Reply (2)
- Hardware type: Ethernet (0x01)
- Hardware address length: 6
- Hops: 0
- Transaction ID: 0x9160a4ba
- Seconds elapsed: 0
- Bootp flags: 0x0000 (Unicast)
  - Client IP address: 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0)
  - Your (client) IP address: 192.168.1.2 (192.168.1.2)
  - Next server IP address: 127.0.0.1 (127.0.0.1)
  - Relay agent IP address: 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0)
  - Client MAC address: AudioCod\_60:a4:ba (00:90:8f:60:a4:ba)
  - Client hardware address padding: 00000000000000000000
  - Server host name not given
  - Boot file name not given
  - Magic cookie: DHCP
- Option: (53) DHCP Message Type (ACK)
- Option: (54) DHCP Server Identifier
- Option: (1) Subnet Mask
- Option: (3) Router
- Option: (51) IP Address Lease Time
- Option: (58) Renewal Time Value
- Option: (59) Rebinding Time Value
- Option: (7) Log Server
- Option: (66) TFTP Server Name
  - Length: 9
  - TFTP Server Name: 127.0.0.1
- Option: (67) Bootfile name
  - Length: 18
  - Bootfile name: 440HD\_2.2.8.49.img
- Option: (255) End

- Filter by **TFTP**, as shown in the figure below.

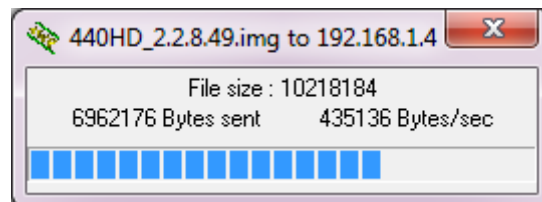
**Figure C-6: Verifying .img File Download with Wireshark – Filtering by TFTP**



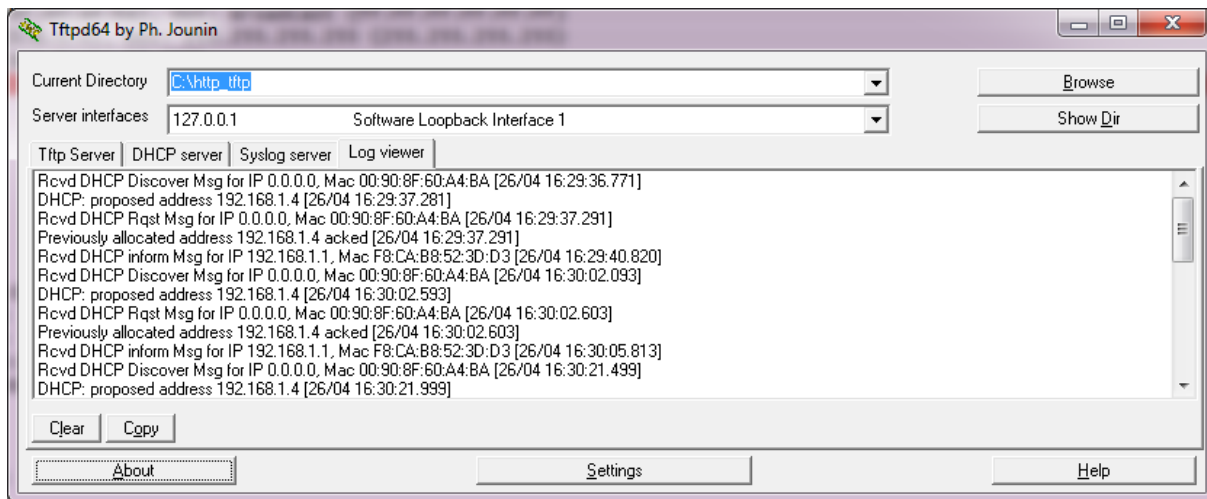
## C.4.2 Verifying Using tftpd64

In **tftpd64**, view the indications shown in the figures below.

**Figure C-7: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64**



**Figure C-8: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64**



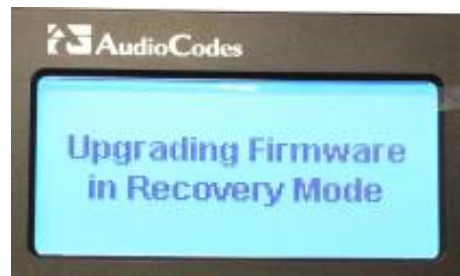
### C.4.3 Verifying Using the Phone LCD

In tftpd64, view the indications shown in the figures below.

**Figure C-9: Verifying .img File Download from the Phone LCD**



**Important:** Do not unplug / power-off the phone while the LCD displays the message shown below.



You can disconnect the phone from the PC and connect to the network LAN *only after the firmware upgrade finishes*, that is, after the phone's LCD displays the following:

**Discovering CDP...Discovering LLDP...Acquiring IP...**

The phone is now up, functioning, and ready to be provisioned.

## D Deploying Genesys IP Phone - Use Case

In a typical scenario, the ISP/integrator:

1. Connects an out-of-the-box phone to the LAN and power supply and manually configures **Static IP** address using the phone's LCD (**MENU** button > **Administration** > **Network Settings** > **LAN Connection Type**).
2. Accesses the phone using the Web interface and prepares configuration files for the enterprise customer (see Section C.1 below).
3. Places the configuration files on the enterprise customer's HTTP server and configures DHCP Server Option 160 to point to the location (see Section C.2 below).



### D.1 Preparing Configuration (cfg) Files for the Enterprise Customer

This section shows how to prepare configuration files for the enterprise customer.

To prepare configuration files for the enterprise customer:

1. Save the phone's default configuration to file (see Section C.1.1)
2. Prepare a global.cfg configuration file (see Section C.1.2)
3. Generate private.cfg configuration files (see Section C.1.3)

#### D.1.1 Saving the Phone's Default Configuration to File

This section shows how to save an out-of-the box phone's default (factory) configuration to file. This will be the baseline on which to prepare a global.cfg configuration file afterwards.

➤ **To save a phone's default configuration to a file:**

1. Open a Web browser and connect to the phone's Web interface using **http://<phone's IP address>**
2. In the Web interface home page (System Information), make sure the phone is running the latest firmware version. If not, obtain a new firmware file from Genesys and load it to the phone using the Web interface's Firmware Upgrade page (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** > **Firmware Upgrade**).
3. In the Web interface's Restore Defaults page, restore the default configuration (**Management** tab > **Administration** > **Restore Defaults**) in case the default configuration was modified.
4. In the Web interface's Configuration File page, save the default configuration to a file (**Management** tab > **Manual Update** > **Configuration File**).

## D.1.2 Preparing a global.cfg Configuration File

This section shows how to prepare a configuration file containing *parameter settings common to all users* in the customer enterprise. You'll name the file global.cfg.

➤ **To prepare a global.cfg configuration file:**

1. In the Web interface, change the default settings of *parameters unique to your enterprise customers* (e.g., Language).
2. Make sure the phone functions as expected.
3. In the Web interface's 'Configuration file' page (**Management > Manual Update > Configuration file**), save the modified configuration parameter settings to a file. Name the file global.cfg.

## D.1.3 Generating MAC-specific <private>.cfg Configuration Files

This section shows how to generate MAC-specific <private>.cfg configuration files that will contain *parameter settings that are unique to each user* in a customer enterprise.

To generate MAC-specific <private>.cfg configuration files:

1. Prepare a csv file (see Section C.1.3.1)
2. Prepare a template file (see Section C.1.3.2)
3. Automatically generate MAC-specific <private>.cfg configuration files using VoIProvision tool (see Section C.1.3.3 on page 246)

### D.1.3.1 Preparing a csv File

Export a csv file from your enterprise customer's IP-PBX or another database. The csv file must list the IP phones in the enterprise, including MAC address, user name, extension ID, and password of each phone. The csv file contains the tagged records for each IP phone. When opened as a text file, the csv file looks like this:

```
[mac],[name],[id],[password]
00908F123456,Jonathan,4071,12345
00908F123457,David,4418,12345
```

**Table D-1: CSV File Description**

[mac]	[name]	[id]	[password]
00908F123456	Jonathan	4071	12345
00908F123457	David	4418	12345



**Note:**

- The first line of the csv file contains the list of tags (e.g., [mac],[name],[id]).
- The remainder of the csv file contains a line record per cfg file (e.g., 00908f112233,4071,Eitan).
- There is no restriction on the format of the tags (e.g., [tag] or @tag@).



### D.1.3.2 Preparing a Template File

This section shows ISPs/integrators how to prepare a template file.

Example of a template file:

```
system/type=420HD
voip/line/0/enabled=1
voip/line/0/id=[id]
voip/line/0/auth_name=[name]
voip/line/0/auth_password=[password]
include global.cfg
```

Define in the template file parameter settings *unique to each user*. Parameter settings unique to each user are typically:

- Line Settings
- Personal Settings
- Phone Directory

Note that the template file contains tags [ ]. The csv file that you prepared previously contains the values for these tags. You'll later use AudioCodes' VoIProvision tool to read the template file, replace the tags with values pulled from the csv file, and automatically generate MAC-specific <private>.cfg configuration files.

Note also that the template file contains **include** functions to link to other files. In the example above, the function **include global.cfg** pulls all parameter settings common to all users from the global.cfg file you prepared previously.

You can include links to specific configuration files, for example:

```
system/type=420HD
include 420HD_<MAC>_voip.cfg
include vlan_conf.cfg
include network_conf.cfg
include provisioning_conf.cfg
```

You can also include URL paths to files in other locations (FTP, TFTP, HTTP, or HTTPS), for example:

```
system/type=420HD
include http://10.10.10.10/420HD_<MAC>_voip.cfg
include https://remote-pc/vlan_conf.cfg
include tftp://10.10.10.10/420HD_<MAC>_network.cfg
include ftp://remote-pc/provisioning_conf.cfg
```



**Note:** If no URL is provided in the template file, the files are retrieved according to the provisioning information (e.g., DHCP Option 160 or 66/67).

```
=4321
```

### D.1.3.3 Using AudioCodes' VolProvision Tool

This section shows how to automatically generate multiple MAC-specific <private>.cfg files using AudioCodes' VolProvision tool. The tool generates a separate cfg file for each IP phone in the customer enterprise.

➤ **To automatically generate MAC-specific <private>.cfg files:**

4. Place AudioCodes' VolProvision tool (VolProvision.exe) in a folder on your pc.
5. Place the global.cfg configuration file that you prepared, together with the csv file and the template file, in the same folder.
6. Run the VolProvision exe; the tool automatically generates the <private>.cfg files.

```
USAGE: VolProvision <csv file><template file><.cfg file>
```



**Note:** AudioCodes' VolProvision tool can run on both Linux and Windows platforms. The tool initially parses the csv file to generate the list of tags. The tool then reads each line record of values in the csv file and for each line record, does this:

- Parses the line record to create a list of values
- Opens the template file
- Generates the cfg file name and creates a new cfg file
- Reads the template file, associates the mapped tags with actual values from the csv file, and writes the result to the cfg file
- Closes the cfg file and template file

Example of an automatically generated MAC-specific file:

```
system/type=420HD
voip/line/0/enabled=1
voip/line/0/id=56832432
voip/line/0/auth_name=3423fdwer2tre
voip/line/0/auth_password=123456
include global.cfg
```

The generated configuration (cfg) files use a similar format to the template file only the tags are replaced with the values read by the VolProvision tool from the csv file. The tag in the csv file which defines the MAC address is used as the cfg file name.

#### D.1.3.3.1 Creating Manually a <private>.cfg Configuration File

You can manually create a <private>.cfg configuration file using a standard ASCII, text-based program such as Notepad. The file name must be the phone's MAC address: **<phone's MAC address>.cfg**. The syntax of the configuration file is as follows:

```
<parameter name>=<value>
```

Ensure that:

- No spaces are on either side of the equals (=) sign
- Each parameter is on a new line

Below is an example of part of a configuration file:

```
system/type=440HD
voip/line/0/enabled=1
```

```
voip/line/0/id=1234
voip/line/0/description=440HD
voip/line/0/auth_name=1234
voip/line/0/auth_password=4321
```

## D.2 Preparing the DHCP Server to Automatically Provision IP Phones

➤ **To prepare the DHCP server:**

- Configure DHCP OPTION 160 on the DHCP server. Point the DHCP server to the URL of the configuration files on the HTTP server.  
Use the string <MAC>  
For example: **http://192.168.2.1/;420HD\_<MAC>\_conf.cfg**

## D.3 Making Sure Phones are Correctly Provisioned

➤ **To make sure that the phones are correctly provisioned:**

1. Connect one of the IP phones to the IP network and power supply.
2. Follow the status displayed on the LCD. Make sure the phone received an IP address and is upgrading the configuration.
3. The phone reboots with the new configuration.
4. Make sure that all functionalities are functioning flawlessly, e.g., that the phone can make VoIP calls.

## E Supported SIP RFCs and Headers

The following is a list of supported SIP RFCs and Methods that you can use to create for the IP phone.

**Table E-1: Supported IETF RFCs**

RFC Number	RFC Title
<b>RFC 2327</b>	SDP
<b>RFC 2617</b>	HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication
<b>RFC 2782</b>	A DNS RR for specifying the location of services
<b>RFC 2833</b>	Telephone event
<b>RFC 3261</b>	SIP
<b>RFC 3262</b>	Reliability of Provisional Responses in SIP
<b>RFC 3263</b>	Locating SIP Servers
<b>RFC 3264</b>	Offer/Answer Model
<b>RFC 3265</b>	(SIP)-Specific Event Notification
<b>RFC 3310</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) Digest Authentication Using Authentication and Key Agreement (AKA)
<b>RFC 3311</b> (Partially Supported)	UPDATE Method
<b>RFC 3326</b> (Partially Supported)	Reason header
<b>RFC 3389</b>	RTP Payload for Comfort Noise
<b>RFC 3515</b>	Refer Method
<b>RFC 3605</b>	RTCP attribute in SDP
<b>RFC 3611</b>	RTP Control Protocol Extended Reports (RTCP XR)
<b>RFC 3665</b>	SIP Basic Call Flow Examples
<b>RFC 3711</b>	The Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP)
<b>RFC 3725</b>	Third Party Call Control
<b>RFC 3842</b>	MWI
<b>RFC 3891</b>	"Replaces" Header
<b>RFC 3892</b> (Sections 2.1-2.3 and 3 are supported)	The SIP Referred-By Mechanism
<b>RFC 3960</b> (Partially Supported)	Early Media and Ringing Tone Generation in SIP (partial compliance)
<b>RFC 3966</b>	The tel URI for Telephone Numbers
<b>RFC 4028</b> (Partially Supported)	Session Timers in the Session Initiation Protocol
<b>RFC 4240</b>	Basic Network Media Services with SIP - NetAnn
<b>RFC 6035</b>	RTCP XR information publishing for Quality of Experience server monitoring.

RFC Number	RFC Title
<b>draft-ietf-sip-privacy-04.txt</b> (Partially Supported)	SIP Extensions for Network-Asserted Caller Identity using Remote-Party-ID header
<b>draft-ietf-sipping-cc-transfer-05</b>	Call Transfer
<b>draft-ietf-sipping-realtimefax-01</b>	SIP Support for Real-time Fax: Call Flow Examples
<b>draft-choudhuri-sip-info-digit-00</b>	SIP INFO method for DTMF digit transport and collection
<b>draft-mahy-sipping-signaled-digits-01</b>	Signaled Telephony Events in the Session Initiation Protocol



**Note:** The following SIP features are not supported:

- Preconditions (RFC 3312)
- SDP - Simple Capability Declaration (RFC 3407)
- S/MIME
- Outbound, Managing Client-Initiated Connections (RFC 5626)
- SNMP SIP MIB (RFC 4780)
- SIP Compression – RFC 5049 (SigComp)
- ICE (RFC 5245)
- Connected Identity (RFC 4474)

## E.1 SIP Compliance Tables

The SIP device complies with RFC 3261, as shown in the following subsections.

### E.1.1 SIP Methods

The device supports the following SIP Methods:

**Table E-2: Supported SIP Methods**

Method	Supported	Comments
INVITE	Yes	
ACK	Yes	
BYE	Yes	
CANCEL	Yes	
REGISTER	Yes	Send only
REFER	Yes	Inside and outside of a dialog
NOTIFY	Yes	
INFO	Yes	
OPTIONS	Yes	
PRACK	Yes	
PUBLISH	Yes	Send only
SUBSCRIBE	Yes	

## E.1.2 SIP Headers

The device supports the following SIP Headers:

**Table E-3: Supported SIP Headers**

Header Field	Supported
Accept	Yes
Alert-Info	Yes
Allow	Yes
Authorization	Yes
Call-ID	Yes
Call-Info	Yes
Contact	Yes
Content-Length	Yes
Content-Type	Yes
Cseq	Yes
Date	Yes
Diversion	Yes
Encryption	No
Expires	Yes
Fax	Yes
From	Yes
History-Info	Yes
Join	Yes
Max-Forwards	Yes
MIN-SE	Yes
P-Asserted-Identity	Yes
P-Preferred-Identity	Yes
Proxy- Authenticate	Yes
Proxy- Authorization	Yes
Prack	Yes
Record- Route	Yes
Refer-To	Yes
Referred-By	Yes
Replaces	Yes
Remote-Party-ID	Yes
Retry-After	Yes

Header Field	Supported
Route	Yes
Session-Expires	Yes
Supported	Yes
Timestamp	Yes
To	Yes
Unsupported	Yes
User- Agent	Yes
Via	Yes
Voicemail	Yes
Warning	Yes
WWW- Authenticate	Yes

## F Parameters Requiring Reload / Reboot

This section informs administrators which parameters require a reboot, which will disconnect a call, and which will require reloading the UI.

- RL\_Voip\_Params – Parameters of voip\_task reload
- Reboot params – parameters for reboot
- RL\_UI\_Params – parameters of UI task reload

All other 348 parameters doesn't require any reload / reboot procedure.

## G Specifications

The IP Phone specifications are listed in the table below.

**Table G-1: IP Phone Specifications**

Feature	Details
<b>VoIP Signaling Protocols</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SIP: RFC 3261, RFC 2327 (SDP)</li> </ul>
<b>Data Protocols</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IPv4, TCP, UDP, ICMP, ARP, DNS and DNS SRV for SIP Signaling</li> <li>SIP over TLS (SIPS)</li> <li>802.1p/Q for Traffic Priority and QoS</li> <li>VLAN Discovery Mechanism (CDP, LLDP and LLDP-MED)</li> <li>ToS (Type of Service) field, indicating desired QoS DHCP Client</li> <li>NTP Client</li> </ul>
<b>Media Processing</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Voice Coders: G.711, G.723.1, G.729A/B, G.722, and OPUS v1.1. OPUS v1.1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ The encoder supports any sampling frequency up to 16 kHz</li> <li>✓ The encoder supports 10 ms to 120 ms packet time</li> <li>✓ The decoder can receive any stream (all modes, mono or stereo, any sampling frequency 8 to 48 kHz)</li> <li>✓ The decoder can receive any packet time apart from 2.5 msec and 5 msec (in 'CELT only' mode only 20 msec packet time is supported)</li> <li>✓ decoder performs up/downsampling and renders the signal as wideband</li> <li>✓ Jitter Buffer size is 2 seconds</li> <li>✓ DTX is currently not supported by the encoder but is supported by the decoder</li> <li>✓ One channel is supported so 3-way conference and MoH are not.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Acoustic Echo Cancellation: G.168-2004 compliant, 64-msec tail length</li> <li>Adaptive Jitter Buffer 300 msec</li> <li>Voice Activity Detection</li> <li>Comfort Noise Generation</li> <li>Packet Lost Concealment</li> <li>RTP/RTCP Packetization (RFC 3550, RFC 3551), SRTP (RFC 3711)</li> <li>DTMF Relay (RFC 2833)</li> </ul>
<b>Telephony Features</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Call Hold / Un-Hold</li> <li>Call Transfer</li> <li>3-Way Conferencing (with local mixing)</li> <li>Redial</li> <li>Caller ID Notification</li> <li>Call Waiting Indication</li> <li>Message Waiting Indication (including MWI LED)</li> <li>Local and Corporate Directories</li> <li>Automatic On-hook Dialing</li> <li>Automatic Answering (Alert-Info header and 'talk' event)</li> <li>CWRR (Call Waiting Reminder Ring)</li> <li>Secondary Dial Tone</li> <li>Call Logs: Missed/Received Calls and Dialed Numbers</li> </ul>

Feature	Details
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Speed Dial</li> <li>▪ Dial Plan (supports up to 4000 characters)</li> <li>▪ URL Dialing</li> <li>▪ Call Forward (Unconditional, Busy, No Answer)</li> <li>▪ BroadSoft Feature Key Synchronization for server-controlled DnD and Call Forward</li> <li>▪ BroadSoft Device Registration Failover</li> <li>▪ Redundant SIP Proxy Mechanism</li> <li>▪ Remote Conferencing (RFC 4240)</li> <li>▪ Multiple Lines (up to two on the 420HD model)</li> </ul>
<b>Configuration / Management</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ TR-069 for remote configuration and management</li> <li>▪ LCD Display User Interface Language Support (Various Languages)</li> <li>▪ Web-based Management (HTTP/HTTPS)</li> <li>▪ Auto-Provisioning (via TFTP, FTP, HTTP, and HTTPS) for firmware and proprietary configuration file upgrade</li> <li>▪ DHCP options (66, 67, and 160) for auto-provisioning</li> <li>▪ DHCP options (120, 60, and 77) for device information</li> <li>▪ DHCP option (42 or 4) for the NTP server</li> <li>▪ DHCP option (43) for vendor specific information</li> <li>▪ DHCP option (2) for the Time Zone Offset</li> <li>▪ LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)</li> <li>▪ Private Labeling Mechanism</li> <li>▪ Configuration file encryption (Entire file and individual parameters)</li> </ul>
<b>Debugging Tools</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Syslog mechanism</li> <li>▪ DSP recording</li> <li>▪ Port mirroring</li> <li>▪ VoIP Status Web page</li> </ul>

Feature	Details
Hardware	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>LCD screen:</b> Graphic LCD (128 X 48) (420HD model)</li> <li>▪ <b>Connectors interfaces:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ 2 x RJ-45 ports (10/100BaseT Ethernet) for WAN and LAN</li> <li>✓ RJ-9 port (jack) for Headset</li> <li>✓ RJ-9 port (jack) for Handset</li> <li>✓ USB interface for USB headset support</li> <li>✓ RJ-11 interface for DHSG</li> </ul> </li> <li>▪ <b>Kensington lock</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Mounting:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ Wall and desktop mounting options</li> <li>✓ One angle for desktop mount, another angle for wall mount</li> </ul> </li> <li>▪ <b>GbE support</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Power:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ DC jack adapter 12V</li> <li>✓ Power supply AC 100 ~ 240V</li> <li>✓ PoE: IEEE802.3af</li> </ul> </li> <li>▪ <b>Keys:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>✓ 4 x softkeys</li> <li>✓ VOICE MAIL message hotkey</li> <li>✓ 4-way navigation keys with ENTER Key</li> <li>✓ MENU</li> <li>✓ REDIAL</li> <li>✓ HOLD</li> <li>✓ MUTE</li> <li>✓ TRANSFER</li> <li>✓ VOLUME control key</li> <li>✓ HEADSET</li> <li>✓ SPEAKER</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Headset Compatibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ For a comprehensive list of supported Jabra headsets, see the Jabra <a href="#">Headset Compatibility Guide</a></li> <li>▪ For a comprehensive list of supported Plantronics headsets headsets see <a href="http://www.plantronics.com/us/compatibility-guide/#/search/">http://www.plantronics.com/us/compatibility-guide/#/search/</a></li> </ul>

# H RTCP-XR Parameters

The following table lists the RTCP-XR parameters that may be reported to the QoE server.

**Table H-1: RTCP-XR Parameters**

Group	Metric Name
<b>General</b>	Start Timestamp
	Stop Timestamp
	Call-ID
	Local Address (IP, Port & SSRC)
	Remote Address (IP, Port & SSRC)
<b>Session Description</b>	Payload Type
	Payload Description
	Sample Rate
	Frame Duration
	Frame Octets
	Frames per Packets
	Packet Loss Concealment
	Silence Suppression State
<b>Jitter Buffer</b>	Jitter Buffer Adaptive
	Jitter Buffer Rate
	Jitter Buffer Nominal
	Jitter Buffer Max
	Jitter Buffer Abs Max
<b>Packet Loss</b>	Network Packet Loss Rate
	Jitter Buffer Discard Rate
<b>Burst Gap Loss</b>	Burst Loss Density
	Burst Duration
	Gap Loss Density
	Gap Duration
	Minimum Gap Threshold
<b>Delay</b>	Round Trip Delay
	End System Delay
	One Way Delay
	Interarrival Jitter
	Min Absolute Jitter
	Signal
	Signal Level
	Noise Level
	Residual Echo Return Noise
<b>Quality Estimates</b>	Listening Quality R
	RLQ Est. Algorithm
	Conversational Quality R

Group	Metric Name
	RCQ Est. Algorithm
	External R In
	Ext. R In Est. Algorithm
	External R Out
	Ext. R Out Est. Algorithm
	MOS-LQ
	MOS-LQ Est. Algorithm
	MOS-CQ
	MOS-CQ Est. Algorithm
	QoE Est. Algorithm

# I Example SIP - PUBLISH Message

This appendix displays an example SIP PUBLISH message extracted from RFC 6035. RTCP-XR values are found under the message body.

```
PUBLISH sip:collector@example.org SIP/2.0
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP pc22.example.org;branch=z9hG4bK3343d7
Max-Forwards: 70
To: <sip:proxy@example.org>
From: Alice <sip:alice@example.org>;tag=a3343df32
Call-ID: 1890463548
CSeq: 4331 PUBLISH
Allow: INVITE, ACK, CANCEL, OPTIONS, BYE, REFER,
SUBSCRIBE, NOTIFY
Event: vq-rtcpxr
Accept: application/sdp, message/sipfrag
Content-Type: application/vq-rtcpxr
Content-Length: ...

VQSessionReport: CallTerm
CallID: 6dg37f1890463
LocalID: Alice <sip:alice@example.org>
RemoteID: Bill <sip:bill@example.net>
OrigID: Alice <sip:alice@example.org>
LocalGroup: example-phone-55671
RemoteGroup: example-gateway-09871
LocalAddr: IP=10.10.1.100 PORT=5000 SSRC=1a3b5c7d
LocalMAC: 00:1f:5b:cc:21:0f
RemoteAddr: IP=11.1.1.150 PORT=5002 SSRC=0x2468abcd
RemoteMAC: 00:26:08:8e:95:02
LocalMetrics:
Timestamps: START=2004-10-10T18:23:43Z
STOP=2004-10-01T18:26:02Z
SessionDesc: PT=18 PD=G729 SR=8000 FD=20 FO=20 FPP=2 PPS=50
FMTP="annexb=no" PLC=3 SSUP=on
JitterBuffer: JBA=3 JBR=2 JBN=40 JBM=80 JBX=120
PacketLoss: NLR=5.0 JDR=2.0
BurstGapLoss: BLD=0 BD=0 GLD=2.0 GD=500 GMIN=16
Delay: RTD=200 ESD=140 SOWD=200 IAJ=2 MAJ=10
Signal: SL=-21 NL=-50 RERL=55
QualityEst: RLQ=90 RCQ=85 EXTRI=90 MOSLQ=4.2 MOSCQ=4.3
QoEEstAlg=P.564
RemoteMetrics:
Timestamps: START=2004-10-10T18:23:43Z
STOP=2004-10-01T18:26:02Z
SessionDesc: PT=18 PD=G729 SR=8000 FD=20 FO=20 FPP=2 PPS=50
FMTP="annexb=no" PLC=3 SSUP=on
JitterBuffer: JBA=3 JBR=2 JBN=40 JBM=80 JBX=120
PacketLoss: NLR=5.0 JDR=2.0
BurstGapLoss: BLD=0 BD=0 GLD=2.0 GD=500 GMIN=16
Delay: RTD=200 ESD=140 SOWD=200 IAJ=2 MAJ=10
Signal: SL=-21 NL=-45 RERL=55
QualityEst: RLQ=90 RCQ=85 MOSLQ=4.3 MOSCQ=4.2 QoEEstAlg=P.564
DialogID: 1890463548@alice.example.org;to-tag=8472761;
from-tag=9123dh311
```



**Note:** Remote Metrics are not supported in this version.



# **Administrator's Manual**

## **Genesys 400 Series Phones**

**Version 2.2.8**